



渡部 由紀子  
WATANABE Yukiko

角谷 佳奈  
SUMITANI Kana

左 弥寿子  
HIDARI Yasuko

緒方 由希子  
OGATA Yukiko

英訳付  
サバイバル  
会話教材

知りたい日本語を知りたい順に!  
“積み上げ不要”的  
短期速習会話教材

# NIHONGO FUN & EASY

Survival Japanese Conversation  
for Beginners

A beginner-level textbook  
to learn practical Japanese  
for daily conversation

Free  
CD

Text written in kana / kanji and romanized letters  
with English translation

	a	i	u	e	o
a	あ	い	う	え	お
k	ka	ki	ku	ke	ko
s	sa	shi	su	se	so
t	さ	し	す	せ	そ
ta	chi	tsu	te	to	
n	た	ち	つ	て	と
na	ni	nu	ne	no	
n	な	に	ぬ	ね	の
ha	hi	fu	he	ho	
h	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ
ma	mi	mu	me	mo	
m	ま	み	む	め	も
ya		yu		yo	
y	や		ゆ		よ
ra	ri	ru	re	ro	
r	ら	り	る	れ	ろ
wa				o	
w	わ				を
n					
n	ん				

	ga	gi	gu	ge	go
g	が	ぎ	ぐ	げ	ご
za	ji	zu	ze	zo	
z	ざ	じ	ず	ぜ	ぞ
da	ji	zu	de	do	
d	だ	ぢ	づ	で	ど
ba	bi	bu	be	bo	
b	ば	び	ぶ	べ	ぼ
pa	pi	pu	pe	po	
p	ぱ	ぴ	ぷ	ペ	ほ

## HIRAGANA

kya	kyu	kyo
きや	きゅ	きょ
sha	shu	sho
しゃ	しゅ	しょ
cha	chu	cho
ちゃ	ちゅ	ちょ
nya	nyu	nyo
にゃ	にゅ	にょ
hya	hyu	hyo
ひや	ひゅ	ひょ
mya	myu	myo
みや	みゅ	みょ

rya	ryu	ryo
りや	りゅ	りょ

gya	gyu	gyo
ぎや	ぎゅ	ぎょ
ja	ju	jo

bya	byu	byo
びや	びゅ	びょ
pya	pyu	pyo

	a	i	u	e	o
a	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ
k	ka	ki	ku	ke	ko
力	キ	ク	ケ	コ	
s	sa	shi	su	se	so
サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	
t	ta	chi	tsu	te	to
タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	
n	na	ni	nu	ne	no
ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	
h	ha	hi	fu	he	ho
ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	
m	ma	mi	mu	me	mo
マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	
y	ya		yu		yo
ヤ			ユ		ヨ
r	ra	ri	ru	re	ro
ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	
w	wa				o
ワ					ヲ
n		n			
ン					

## KATAKANA

kya	kyu	kyo
キヤ	キュ	キョ
sha	shu	sho
شا	ش	شو
cha	chu	cho
チャ	チュ	チョ
nya	nyu	nyo
ニヤ	ニュ	ニョ
hya	hyu	hyo
ヒヤ	ヒュ	ヒョ
mya	myu	myo
ミヤ	ミュ	ミョ

rya	ryu	ryo
リヤ	リュ	リョ

	ga	gi	gu	ge	go
g	ガ	ギ	グ	ゲ	ゴ
za	ji	zu	ze	zo	
ザ	ジ	ズ	ゼ	ゾ	
da	ji	zu	de	do	
ダ	ヂ	ヅ	ヂ	ド	
ba	bi	bu	be	bo	
バ	ビ	ブ	ベ	ボ	
pa	pi	pu	pe	po	
パ	ピ	プ	ペ	ポ	

gya	gyu	gyo
ギヤ	ギュ	ギョ
ja	ju	jo

bya	byu	byo
ビヤ	ビュ	ビョ
pya	pyu	pyo

\* I – adjective

色  
Iro  
Colors



赤 (い)\* aka(i)\*  
red



青 (い)\* ao(i)\*  
blue



黄色 (い)\* kiro(i)\*  
yellow



黒 (い)\* kuro(i)\*  
black



白 (い)\* shiro(i)\*  
white



緑 midori  
green



オレンジ orenji  
orange



ピンク pinku  
pink



黄緑 kimidori  
yellow-green



紺 kon  
dark blue



水色 mizuiro  
light blue



紫 murasaki  
purple



茶色 / ブラウン  
chairo / burauun  
brown



灰色 / グレー  
haiiro / gure  
gray

日本料理  
Nihon ryōri  
Japanese Food



すき焼き sukiyaki  
beef and vegetables cooked in sweet-salty soy sauce



しゃぶしゃぶ shabu shabu  
Japanese variant of hot pot



焼肉 yakiniku  
grilled meat



焼き鳥 yakitori  
grilled chicken skewers



刺身 sashimi  
raw fish



天ぷら tempura  
deep-fried vegetables or seafood



から揚げ karaage  
fried chicken



しょうが焼き shogayaki  
pork fried with ginger



鶏の照り焼き tori no teriyaki  
chicken teriyaki



肉じゃが nikujaga  
meat and potato stew



おでん odon  
broth with egg, steamed fish cake etc.



親子丼 oyako don  
chicken and egg rice bowl



牛丼 gyū don  
beef rice bowl



かつ丼 katsu don  
pork cutlet rice bowl



天丼 ten don  
tempura rice bowl



にぎり寿司 nigiri zushi  
sushi



ちらしずし chirashi zushi  
sashimi or various toppings  
on sushi rice



いなり寿司 inari zushi  
sushi rice-stuffed fried tofu



のり巻き norimaki  
sushi roll



きつねうどん kitsune udon  
thick white wheat noodles  
with deep-fried tofu



たぬきうどん tanuki udon  
thick white wheat noodles  
with tempura batter



天ぷらそば tempura soba  
buckwheat noodles with tempura



ざるそば zaru soba  
cold soba with dipping sauce



しょうゆラーメン shōyu rāmen  
soy sauce based ramen



塩ラーメン shio rāmen  
salt based ramen



味噌ラーメン miso rāmen  
miso based ramen



とんこつラーメン tonkotsu rāmen  
pork bone based ramen



焼きそば yakisoba  
fried noodles



お好み焼き okonomiyaki  
Japanese pan-fried pizza  
with various ingredients



もんじゃ焼き monjayaki  
thin Japanese pan-fried pizza  
with various ingredients



たこ焼き takoyaki  
octopus dumpling



冷奴 hiyayakko  
cold tofu



揚げ出し豆腐 agedashi dōfū  
deep-fried tofu with broth



枝豆 edamame  
boiled soybeans



卵焼き tamagoyaki  
fried rolled egg



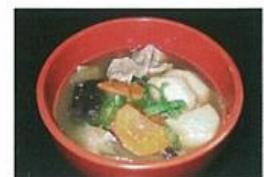
おにぎり onigiri  
rice ball



お茶漬け ochazuke  
rice bowl filled with green tea



味噌汁 misoshiru  
miso soup



とん汁 tonjiru  
pork miso soup with vegetables

### 洋食

#### Yōshoku

Japanese Style  
Western Food



コロッケ korokke  
croquette



えびフライ ebifurai  
fried shrimp



トンカツ tonkatsu  
pork cutlet



ハンバーグ hambāgu  
hamburger meat



カレーライス karē raisu  
curry with rice



カツカレー katsu karē  
pork cutlet curry



オムライス omuraisu  
fried omelette stuffed with rice



ミートソース mīto sōsu  
spaghetti meat sauce



中華料理  
Chūka ryōri  
Chinese Food



チャーハン chāhan  
fried rice



餃子 gyōza  
pot stickers



春巻き harumaki  
spring roll



シュウマイ shūmai  
steamed meat dumpling



デザート  
Dezāto  
Desserts



ショートケーキ shōtokēki  
strawberry shortcake



ショークリーム shūkurīmu  
cream puff



漬物  
Tsukemono  
Pickled Vegetables



梅干 umeboshi  
pickled plum



たくあん takuan  
pickled daikon radish



ふくじんづけ fukujinzuke  
pickled vegetables in soy sauce



らっきょう rakkyō  
Japanese leek pickles



キムチ kimuchi  
Korean style pickles

薬味  
Yakumi  
Condiments



のり nori  
nori seaweed



青のり aonori  
green nori seaweed



かつおぶし katsuobushi  
sliced dried bonito



紅しょうが beni shōga  
pickled ginger



ごま goma  
sesame



ねぎ negi  
green onion



大根おろし daikon oroshi  
grated daikon radish



七味 (とうがらし)  
shichimi (tōgarashi)  
a mixture of red pepper and other spices



わさび wasabi  
wasabi



からし karashi  
mustard



豆腐 tofu



油揚げ abura age  
deep-fried tofu



かまぼこ kamaboko  
steamed fish cake



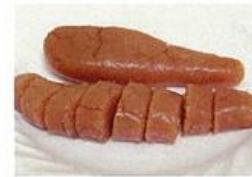
こんにゃく konnyaku  
konjac potato gel



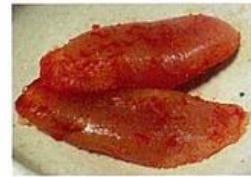
わかめ wakame  
wakame seaweed



こんぶ kombu  
kombu seaweed



たらこ tarako  
salted cod roe



明太子 mentaiko  
spiced cod roe



# NIHONGO FUN & EASY

Survival Japanese Conversation  
for Beginners

緒方 由希子  
OGATA Yukiko

角谷 佳奈  
SUMITANI Kana

左 弥寿子  
HIDARI Yasuko

渡部 由紀子  
WATANABE Yukiko

# To Users of This Book

The idea to make this book came after we failed to come across a beginner-level text that met the needs of students hoping to learn practical Japanese for immediate use in the real world as opposed to grammar.

The majority of beginner texts we found made it difficult to grasp the Japanese language in a systematic way. Over-technical explanations, unnatural example sentences, and limited scope for a lesser learning experience, as well as choppy sentences that did not adequately portray an actual conversation, made it practically impossible to find a textbook that we felt would satisfy the curiosity of the adult learner.

This text is characterized by the following four points:

1. Instead of grammar, phrases and their function within a conversation are written out to help students learn natural sounding Japanese.
2. Units are composed of several different elements, with a variety of situations, functions, and topics to allow students to effectively learn genuinely helpful expressions in accordance with their interests.
3. Conversation drills are presented separately from grammatical explanations to help students easily understand both practical exercises and the workings of the Japanese language.
4. Each unit contains a variety of practice exercises to help students naturally acquire target phrases and expressions.

Our goal in creating this book was to realize a text that 1) motivated students to talk about a variety of subjects with sentence patterns they had just learned; 2) spoke to adults with a sense of intellectual curiosity in a practical way; and 3) made readers feel more familiar with Japan.

At the core of this book is our desire for everyone who has had the opportunity to come to Japan to enjoy their stay in the country. Nothing would make us happier than to know that this book in some way contributed to your having a positive experience in Japan.

Numerous people have contributed to the completion of this book since we first began writing it in 2007.

Our editor, Maiko Kohno, and illustrator, Noriaki Hiratsuka, went to great lengths to introduce us to the unknown world of publishing, and by far provided the greatest help in finishing this project.

Steve King of Pearson Education, who worked as our advisor, provided valuable insight wherever necessary. Matthew Harvey, husband of co-author Yukiko Watanabe, was always on hand to share ideas and lend his support right from the conceptual stages of the book. We would like to take this space to thank them again.

In closing, we would also like to offer our respect and gratitude to the following people at Iidabashi Japanese Language School: to the faculty, who provided feedback from their vast experience in using different teaching materials; to the staff, who took on additional tasks in their day-to-day workload to support the writing of this book from behind the scenes; and to all the students we have encountered in both the past and present, who have always been there to provide the motivation and inspiration to produce materials for learning Japanese. Thank you all from the bottom of our hearts.

The Authors

## この本を使う方へ

私たちがこのテキストを作ろうと思ったきっかけは、ビギナーレベルで、文法ではなく街ですぐに使える実践的な日本語を学びたい、という学習者に「これ！」と勧められるテキストになかなか出会えなかったからです。既存のテキストは文法の積み上げを意識しすぎて、日本語が非常に不自然だったり、場面に特化しすぎて学習内容に広がりがなかったり、また、文法が細切れに出てくるため、「日本語」を体系的にとらえるのが難しいように感じました。そのため、これでは学習者の日本語に対する自然な好奇心を満たすものになり得ないのではないか、と思っていました。

本テキストの特徴は、①文法ではなくフレーズと機能で提示されるため自然な日本語が学べる、②場面、機能、トピックなど様々な要素からユニットを立てているため、本当に役に立つ表現を効果的に学ぶことができる、③文法編を別に作ることで、日本語とはどんな言語なのかという解説と実践練習を行き来しながら学ぶことができる、④各課に様々な形の練習が何度も出てくることで自然に表現が身につく、ということなどです。

本テキストを使っていただく先生方にとっては、授業準備の負担が少ないよう、また、比較的経験の浅い先生やボランティアの方でも使用しやすいものになるよう心がけました。テキストに沿って進めるだけでいろいろなタイプの練習が楽しめますし、特に拡張練習では、学生が自発的にクリエイティブな練習ができるようにいろいろな仕掛けがしてあります。

作成にあたって私たちがイメージしたのは、「習ったフレーズをすぐに使ってみたくなる」「実践的かつ知的好奇心をくすぐるような大人向けの」「日本をもっと身边に感じる」テキストです。そして、その根底にあるのは、「縁あって来日した外国人の皆さんに、日本を楽しんでほしい」という想いです。

この本を通して日本語学習者の皆さんと日本との出会いがより素敵なものになれば、心から嬉しく思います。

2007年に作成を始めてからこの本が出版されるまでに多くの方のご協力をいただきました。編集担当の河野麻衣子さん、イラストレーターの平塚徳明さんは限られた時間の中によりよい教材を作り上げるため最大限の努力をしてくださいました。教材の試用を重ね、たくさんのフィードバックを下さったいだばし日本語学院の先生方、通常業務をより多く負担することで膨大な時間のかかる執筆活動を陰ながら支えてくださった同校スタッフの皆さん、また、私たちがこの教材を作成する原動力となった過去から現在に至るまでの全ての同校の学習者たちにも、心からの敬意と感謝を伝えたいと思います。

著者一同

# Contents | 目次

[Pre-text] Pictures   写真資料 .....	i - iv
To Users of This Book   この本を使う方へ .....	2
How to Use This Book   この本の使い方 .....	6
Must-know Words and Phrases   絶対に覚えておきたい表現 .....	10
Explanatory Notes   凡例 .....	12
<b>UNIT 1 I am John.</b> .....	13
Introducing yourself   自己紹介	
Watashi wa Jon desu. / O-shigoto wa? / Ongaku ga suki desu.	
I am John. / (What is) your job? / I like music.	
<b>UNIT 2 Is there an ATM around here?</b> .....	25
Asking for directions   場所を尋ねる	
Kono hen ni, ATM arimasu ka. / Toire, doko desu ka? /	
Yūbinkyoku ni ikitai n desu ga..... .	
Is there an ATM around here? / Where is the restroom? / I'm trying to get to the post office.	
<b>UNIT 3 How much is this?</b> .....	37
Shopping   買い物	
Kasa, arimasu ka. / Kore, ikura desu ka. / Kono T-shatsu, kudasai. /	
Mō chotto yasui no, arimasen ka.	
Do you have umbrellas? / How much is this? / I'll have this T-shirt. / Do you have one a little cheaper?	
<b>UNIT 4 Take out, please.</b> .....	51
Convenience stores and restaurants   コンビニ・レストラン	
Menyū, onegaishimasu. / Kyō no ranchi, nan desu ka. / Mochikaeri de. /	
Fukuro, kekkō desu.	
Could I have a menu? / What's the lunch of the day? / Take out, please. / No bag, thank you.	
<b>UNIT 5 Can I pay by credit card?</b> .....	67
Asking permission   許可を得る	
Kādo de ii desu ka. / Kono pen, karite mo ii desu ka.	
Can I pay by credit card? / May I borrow this pen?	
<b>UNIT 6 Please wait a moment.</b> .....	79
Making requests   依頼する	
Chotto matte kudasai. / Yukkuri hanashite moraemasen ka.	
Please wait a moment. / Could you speak more slowly?	

<b>UNIT 7 Does this (train) go to Yokohama?</b>	91
Transportation   交通	
Kore, Yokohama ni ikimasu ka. / Shinjuku made dōyatte ikeba ii desu ka. / Tōkyō kara Kyōto made donogurai kakarimasu ka.	
Does this (train) go to Yokohama? / How do I get to Shinjuku? / How long does it take from Tokyo to Kyoto?	
<b>UNIT 8 I'm going to an art museum.</b>	105
Talking about plans and activities   予定や行動について話す	
Bijutsukan ni ikimasu. / Kinō wa uchi de Nihon-go o benkyō shimashita. / Sumō o mitai desu.	
I'm going to an art museum. / I studied Japanese at home yesterday. / I want to watch sumo wrestling.	
<b>UNIT 9 How do you like living in Japan?</b>	119
Talking about impressions   感想を言う	
Nihon no seikatsu wa dō desu ka. / Ryokō wa dō deshita ka. How do you like living in Japan? / How was your trip?	
<b>UNIT 10 What does that taste like?</b>	131
Eating   食事	
Sore, donna aji desu ka. / Oishisō desu ne. / Butaniku wa chotto..... . What does that taste like? / That looks delicious. / I can't really eat pork.	
<b>UNIT 11 It's nice weather today, isn't it?</b>	143
Socializing I - Making small talk   世間話をする	
Kyō wa ii tenki desu ne. / Saikin shigoto wa dō desu ka. / Ja, mata. It's nice weather today, isn't it? / How has your job been lately? / See you later.	
<b>UNIT 12 Would you like to have a cup of tea?</b>	155
Socializing II - Invitations   誘う	
Ocha o nomimasen ka. / Onsen ni itta koto ga arimasu ka. Would you like to have a cup of tea? / Have you ever been to an onsen (hot spring)?	
<b>Grammar   文法</b>	165
Translation of Dialogue   ダイアログ翻訳	184
Listening Answers and CD Script   リスニング解答とスクリプト	186

## [Appendix] Handy Wordbook | 別冊語彙集

# How to Use This Book (To Learners)

## Introduction

This book is designed to help beginner students, including those with no knowledge of the Japanese language, acquire natural-sounding, essential Japanese that can be used immediately in daily conversation. Because this book does not develop concepts of grammar as it progresses, students may begin studying from any of the 12 units at their leisure.

Particles, a grammatical device of the Japanese language, are frequently omitted as they are in daily conversation to expose students to natural sounding Japanese as much as possible. Roman letters and kana spellings to approximate the actual pronunciation of certain words are also included.

We recommend that students memorize phrases and expressions as they appear in the included dialogues so as to reproduce them later, and not analyze all elements of each sentence to study grammar.

The Grammar Appendix included at the back of the book is a complement to the main text intended to help students acquire a systematic understanding of the construction of the Japanese language. We recommend that students use the vocabulary list in the Appendix to expand exercises and practice dialogues found in the book, as well as carry around for reference of necessary words for daily conversation. The color pages in the book's pre-text include pictures of foods commonly seen in Japan, which should prove useful for daily life as well as conversation practice.

## What's in a unit

Unit phrases	Phrase 1 - 4: Use note and example sentences to understand how phrases are used.  Practice A: New words and practice conversation patterns. Use words from Practice A to complete phrases and communicate. Practice until you can say the words you need to know without looking at the book.  Practice B: Short practice conversations using target phrases. Use words in Practice A to complete brief practice conversations.
General exercises	Dialogue: Use the target phrases in each unit to practice longer conversations. Listening: Practice listening exercises with Japanese spoken at a natural speed. Do you remember?: Use the right word or sentence as indicated by an illustration to see if you have learned target phrases. Role playing: Perform role play exercises using the expressions learned in that unit. Phrases for This Unit: Review the phrases learned in a unit in addition to other crucial expressions.
Other pages	Material: A page of items to help effectively perform practice conversations. One More Step: Practice for students wanting to challenge themselves to more difficult expressions. Remember and Use!: A page to help students memorize basic Japanese words, including numbers, verbs, and adjectives, for later use. Good to Know: Helpful introductions to services and Japanese words and phrases that make life in Japan a breeze.

## この本の使い方(先生方へ)

### はじめに

本テキストは、日本語の知識が全くない人から初級前半程度の文法を習得している学習者が、日常生活で必要なすぐに使える自然な日本語を習得できるように作られた教材です。

本テキストは文法積み上げ式のテキストではありませんので、全部で12あるユニットのうちのどのユニットからでも学習を始めることができます。学習者の希望やレベルに合わせて使用する課をピックアップしたり、ユニットの順番を変えて使用しても問題ありません。

UNIT 1から12まで順に学習を進めていくときには、既習ユニットの文型を取り入れながら学習を拡張していくような練習も含まれており、効果的な学習をすることができます。

なるべく自然な日本語に触れてもらえるように、日常的に使われている助詞の省略などはそのまま表記しました。またローマ字表記も、音声と近い表記を採用しました。

フレーズや談話に出てくる表現については、ひとつずつ分解して文法的な説明を加えるのではなく、そのままフレーズとして覚えることを想定しています。そのため、教師は教えるというよりも、そのフレーズの使用場面を想定した会話練習と一緒にしたり、フレーズや語彙を覚えやすいようにサポートする役割が期待されます。

動詞や形容詞の活用についても、そのユニット内の会話練習で必要な形だけを練習し、活用形の作り方は教えません。そのような文法的な解説は、文法編にまとめて掲載してあります。ただし、基本練習をしたい人向けに、UNIT 8とUNIT 9のあとのRemember and Use!で、動詞と形容詞の時制・肯定形・否定形の活用練習ができるようになっています。

文法編は、学習者が日本語の仕組みを体系的に理解できるような読み物としてあり、本文と関連しています。別冊語彙集は、Practice Aの代入練習や談話練習などで学習者がより幅広い語彙から練習をできるように、また、持ち運び可能な単語集としても利用できるよう別冊として付属させました。また、巻頭のカラー料理写真もぜひ練習に活用してください。

本テキストをメイン教材として利用する場合には、授業内でPractice Aの語彙の定着をはかりながら進めていくのが効果的です。また、サブテキストとして使用する場合には、提出されている語彙だけでなく、学習者の使いたい語彙や場面を取り上げて練習を膨らませていくのがよいでしょう。

### 1 ユニットの構成と授業の流れ

#### ① 学習目標の確認・動機づけ

ユニット扉には、学習するフレーズの使用場面と学習目標(ゴール)が書いてあります。

まずはここを読んで、これから学習するフレーズがどんな場面で使われるものなのか、また、このユニットを学習することで何ができるようになるのか、という学習目標の確認をし、学習の動機づけを行いましょう。

## ② フレーズ導入(各ユニットに2～4のフレーズがあります。)

NOTEとEX.で、フレーズの機能と意味の確認をします。

クラスではホワイトボードなどを使って本日の学習内容としてのフレーズ提示を行うと流れをうまく作ることができます。

## ③ フレーズ練習

Practice Aのパターン練習をします。

語彙の確認：教師が指導する場合にはどこまでを覚えさせる語彙とするのかしっかりと目標を決めて語彙導入、練習を行うのが効果的です。特に教室ではできるだけカードなどで繰り返し語彙の提示を行って定着を図ってください。

代入練習：フレーズにPractice Aの語彙を代入した文を言わせます。なるべく文字を追わずにフレーズを言わせるようにしましょう。学習者にあったスピードで、可能な場合は自然なスピードに近づけていってみましょう。

## ④ 談話練習

Practice Bでフレーズを使った談話練習をします。

談話の意味確認：読み合わせ後、下のMEMOや英訳でわからない語彙を確認し、談話の場面をしっかりと理解させてください。問題文の指示にしたがって、< >にPractice Aの語彙などを入れ替えながら、談話練習をしてください。ここでも、なるべく文字を見ずに談話ができるよう繰り返し練習を行ってください。

本テキストでは、UNIT 1～UNIT 7をサバイバルパート、UNIT 8～UNIT 12をコミュニケーションパートと位置づけています。サバイバルパートでは日本人と外国人役がはっきりしている談話が多いので、教師と行う際には教師が店員や駅員などの日本人役を担当するようしましょう。

## ⑤ 総合談話練習

Dialogueでユニット内の複数のフレーズを使った談話練習をします。

ユニット内で出てきた複数のフレーズをひとつの場面の中で使ってみる総合的な談話練習です。本文内に英訳がないので、読み合わせをして学習者の理解度を確認してから練習に入ってください。談話の理解や入れ替えを助けるために、右ページにMaterialがつけられていることもあります。これもできるだけ文字を追わずに談話ができるよう繰り返し練習を行ってください。また、可能な場合は学習者のオリジナルパターンを作ってみるよう促してみてください。

## ⑥ リスニング練習

Listeningで、ユニットで学習したフレーズを使った会話の聞き取り練習をします。

各ユニットに4問出題されます。自然に近いスピードで話されているので、全てを聞き取るのではなく必要な情報のスキャンする能力を高めることを目指しています。

## ⑦ ロールプレイ練習

Role playingで、学習したフレーズを使って自分で会話を組み立てる練習をします。

必ず決まった答えがあるわけではないので、ロールカードを見て、ここまで学習内容を応用し、自分なりの会話を組み立てるよう促しましょう。既にいくつかのユニットを学習済みであれば、既習のフレーズや語彙も会話に盛り込めるように教師が学習者をリードできると、より効果的です。

## ⑧ 場面練習

Do you remember? では、日常場面で起こりがちな場面のイラストを見て、学習したフレーズがぱっと出てくるかを確認する練習をします。

フレーズの確認だけでなく、そこから会話を発展させたり、その場面で考えられる他の会話を考えるなど、応用練習の素材としても活用してください。

## ⑨ フレーズ復習・到達度チェック

Phrases for This Unitでは、ユニットに出てきたターゲットフレーズと、談話練習で出てきた便利な表現をまとめてあるので、1ユニットの内容を簡単に振り返ることができます。

また、ユニットの最後の項目では、ユニット扉で設定した学習目標が達成できたかどうかをチェックすることができます。

## ⑩ その他

Remember and Use! : 最低限覚えておきたい動詞や形容詞、数字を定着させるための練習ページです。場面会話だけでなく文章作成の力もつけたい人にお勧めです。また、このコーナーをユニット学習に入る前に学習しておくのも効果的です。

One More Step: メインの学習項目に加えて、更に高度な語彙や表現に挑戦できるよう作られたページです。

Good to Know : 日本の生活の中で知っておくと便利なサービス、日本語の仕組みや運用に関する情報を紹介するコーナーです。

## 参考カリキュラム例

### • 30時間コース

メインユニット練習 … 約24時間 : UNIT 1 ~ 12 (1ユニット2時間×12ユニット)

定着・応用練習 …… 約6時間 : Remember & Use!, One More Step

### • 20時間コース

メインユニット練習 … 約14時間 : UNIT 1 ~ 7 (1ユニット2時間×7ユニット)

定着・応用練習 …… 約6時間 : 絶対に覚えておきたい表現、Remember & Use!

# Must-know Words and Phrases | 絶対に覚えておきたい表現

## ● Survival Phrases

1. すみません。\*  
Sumimasen.\*  
\*An all-purpose phrase that can be used when calling out to a person, apologizing, or thanking someone.
2. a) はい。 b) いいえ。  
a) Hai. b) lie.
3. a) そうです。 b) ちがいます。  
a) Sō desu. b) Chigaimasu.
4. 英語は話せますか。  
Eigo wa hanasemasu ka.  
Do you speak English?
5. 英語が話せる人はいますか。  
Eigo ga hanaseru hito wa imasu ka.  
Is there anyone (here) who speaks English?
6. Q: わかりますか。  
Q: Wakarimasu ka.  
A: a) わかります。 b) わかりません。  
A: a) Wakarimasu. b) Wakarimasen.  
Q: Do you understand?  
A: a) I understand. b) I don't understand.
7. Q: わかりましたか。  
Q: Wakarimashita ka.  
A: a) わかりました。 b) わかりません。  
A: a) Wakarimashita. b) Wakarimasen.  
Q: Did you get that? / Did that make sense?  
A: a) I got it. b) I don't get it.
8. 日本語はわかりません。  
Nihon-go wa wakarimasen.  
I don't understand Japanese.
9. Q: 大丈夫ですか。  
Q: Daijōbu desu ka.  
A: 大丈夫です。  
A: Daijōbu desu.  
Q: Are you alright?  
A: I'm alright.
10. Q: いいですか。  
Q: ii desu ka.  
A: a) どうぞ。 b) すみません、ちょっと……。  
A: a) Dōzo. b) Sumimasen, chotto....  
Q: Can I ...? / Is it okay?  
A: a) Please./Okay./Go ahead. b) Sorry, but.... .
11. もう一度いいですか。  
Mō ichido ii desu ka.  
Would you say that one more time?

## ● Greetings

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. おはよう (ございます)。<br>Ohayō (gozaimasu).     | Good morning.  |
| 2. こんにちは。<br>Konnichiwa.                   | Hello. / Good afternoon.                               |
| 3. こんばんは。<br>Kombanwa.                     | Good evening.  |
| 4. じゃ、また。<br>Ja, mata.                     | See you (later).                                       |
| 5. ありがとうございます。<br>Arigatō (gozaimasu).     | Thank you (very much).                                 |
| 6. いただきます。<br>Itadakimasu.                 | I humbly receive this food.<br>[said before a meal]    |
| 7. ごちそうさま (でした)。<br>Gochisōsama (deshita). | Thank you.<br>[a set phrase said at the end of a meal] |

## ● Helpful Words and Phrases

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. (お)元気ですか。*<br>(O)genki desu ka. *    | How are you?<br><small>*Typically not asked to people seen on a daily basis.</small> |
| 2. 元気です。<br>Genki desu.                 | I'm fine.  |
| 3. がんばって (ください)。<br>Gambatte (kudasai). | Do your best. / Good luck. / Break a leg.  |
| 4. どうぞ。<br>Dōzo.                        | Go ahead. / Please.  |
| 5. どうも。<br>Dōmo.                        | Thanks. [casual]   |
| 6. すごい<br>sugoi                         | Awesome/amazing/great/a lot  |
| 7. 本当<br>hontō                          | Really/true  |
| 8. もちろん<br>mochiron                     | Of course  |

## ● Numbers

1 いち ichi	2 に ni	3 さん san	4 よん／し yon / shi	5 ご go	6 ろく roku	7 なな／しち nana / shichi	8 はち hachi	9 きゅう／く kyū / ku	10 じゅう jū
-----------------	--------------	----------------	------------------------	--------------	-----------------	-----------------------------	------------------	------------------------	-----------------

# Explanatory Notes | 凡例

## A note about kana / kanji and the Romanization

Because this book is designed to help learners acquire conversational skills regardless of their ability to read Japanese, text is displayed in both a mixture of *kana* and *kanji* as well as Roman letters. However, some areas of the book only feature Roman letters due to space constraints.

*Kanji* are printed wherever they would normally be used in written Japanese, along with their readings in *hiragana*.

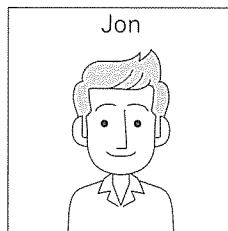
This book mainly incorporates the Hepburn system of Romanization.

Long vowels are indicated with a horizontal line (eg. Tōkyō = Tookyoo).

However, the long [i] found at the end i-adjectives, such as in "tanoshii" are spelled out to more easily demonstrate conjugations. Long [e] sounds are written as "ee" or "ei" depending on the original spelling of the word in question, although many times words with an [ei] sound are pronounced more like [ee].

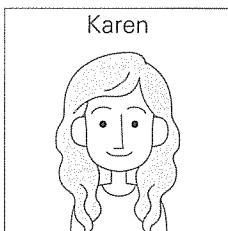
Compound words include hyphens to indicate boundaries between individual words to aid pronunciation, such as "100-en" and "hon-ya".

## Characters in this book



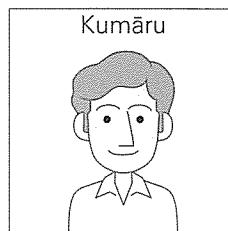
Jon

ジョン／John  
American, Engineer



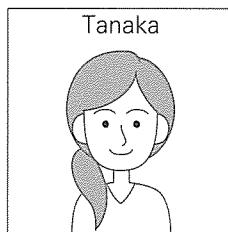
Karen

カレン／Karen  
British, John's wife/  
English teacher



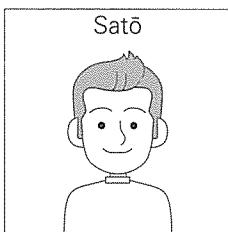
Kumāru

クマール／Kumar  
Indian, John's co-worker/  
Engineer



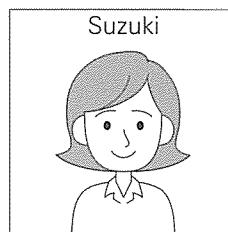
Tanaka

田中／Tanaka  
たなか  
Japanese, John's co-worker in  
the general affairs division



Satō

佐藤／Sato  
さとう  
Japanese, John and Karen's  
friend/Student



Suzuki

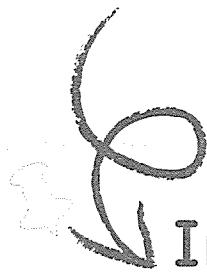
鈴木／Suzuki  
すずき  
Japanese, John and Karen's  
friend/Housewife



# I am John.

私はジョンです。

watashi wa Jon desu.



## Introducing yourself

自己紹介

### GOALS FOR UNIT 1

- Provide a simple self-introduction
- Ask a person you just met for their name and occupation
- Have a conversation about hobbies and interests

## Phrase 1

Introducing oneself.

Track  
1

私はジョンです。  
わたくし

Watashi wa Jon desu.

I am John.

NOTE

"A wa B desu" means "A = B". "wa" marks the topic/subject of the sentence, while "desu" means something similar to "to be" in English, and comes after a noun or adjective in polite sentences. Japanese speakers often omit the topic, or "\_\_\_wa" portion of a sentence, when the identity of the topic is obvious from context.

Ex.

ジョン：私はジョンです。  
わたくし

(私は)アメリカ人です。どうぞよろしく。  
わたくし

Jon : Watashi wa Jon desu.

(Watashi wa) Amerika-jin desu. Dōzo yoroshiku.

John : I am John.

(I'm) American.

It's nice to meet you.

Practice  
A

私は\_\_\_\_\_です。  
わたくし

Let's use the following words with the phrase "Watashi wa \_\_\_\_\_desu."

ジョン

Jon

John

→ "Your name"



アメリカ人

Amerika-jin\*<sup>1</sup>

American  
→ See Appendix, Countries

エンジニア

enjinia

engineer

→ See Appendix, Jobs

Jobs

学生  
がくせい

gakusei  
student

先生／教師  
せんせい／きょうし

sensei / kyōshi\*<sup>2</sup>  
teacher

会社員  
かいしゃいん

kaishain  
company worker

主婦  
しゅふ

shufu  
housewife

Countries

日本  
にほん

Nihon  
Japan

インド

Indo  
India

イギリス

Igirisu  
United Kingdom

オーストラリア

Ōsutoraria  
Australia

\* 1 "[country]+ jin" = people / person from that country / area.

\* 2 Use "kyōshi" for yourself and the respectful "sensei" for another person.

Practice  
B-1

Provide a self-introduction with the words found in Practice A.

ジョン : はじめまして。私は(ジョン)です。  
わたし

〈エンジニア〉です。〈アメリカ〉人です。どうぞよろしく。

クマール : 〈クマール〉です。〈インド〉からきました。

こちらこそ、どうぞよろしく。

Jon : Hajimemashite. Watashi wa <Jon> desu.  
<Enjinia> desu. <Amerika>-jin desu.  
Dōzo yoroshiku.

Kumāru : <Kumāru> desu. <Indo> kara kimashita.  
Kochira koso, dōzo yoroshiku.

Jon : How do you do? I'm John.  
I'm an engineer. I'm American.  
It's nice to meet you.  
Kumar : I'm Kumar. I'm from India.  
The pleasure is mine.

Practice  
B-2

Ask for the listener's job and nationality using the words in Practice A.

佐藤 : ジョンさんは(学生)ですか。

ジョン : いいえ、(学生)じゃありません。\* 〈エンジニア〉です。

Satō : Jon-san wa <gakusei> desu ka.

Jon : Iie, <gakusei> ja arimasen.\*  
<Enjinia> desu.

Sato : Are you a student, John-san?

John : No, I'm not a student.  
I'm an engineer.

\* To answer affirmatively, say "Hai, gakusei desu."

## MEMO

はじめまして。/ Hajimemashite. / How do you do?

どうぞよろしく。/ Dōzo yoroshiku. / It's nice to meet you.

～からきました。/ ... kara kimashita. / (I'm) from ...

こちらこそ / kochira koso / an emphatic way to say "I'm the one" that can be translated as "me too"

～か。/ ... ka. / Add "ka" to the end of a declarative sentence to make it question. Ex. Jon-san desu ka. = Are you John?

はい / いいえ / hai / iie / yes / no

(Aは)Bじゃありません。/ (A wa) B ja arimasen. / A is not B.

## Phrase 2

Ask the listener for information about him/herself.



お仕事は？  
し ごと

O-shigoto wa?

(What is) your job?

NOTE

"\_\_\_wa?" is an abbreviated version of a question. Japanese speakers often omit the question words of a sentence and only state the topic when it is obvious they are asking a question from context. Rising intonation signifies that the "\_\_\_wa?" statement is an abbreviated question. Ex. O-shigoto wa? (↑)

### Ex.

①田中：お仕事は(なんですか)? ジョン：エンジニアです。

②田中：お住まいは(どこですか)? ジョン：千葉です。

①Tanaka :O-shigoto wa (nan desu ka) ?

Jon :Enjinia desu.

②Tanaka :O-sumai wa (doko desu ka) ?

Jon :Chiba desu.

①Tanaka :(What is) your job?

John :(I'm) an engineer.

②Tanaka :(Where do) you live?

John :(I live) in Chiba.



Use the following words with the phrase "\_\_\_ wa?"

(お\*)仕事  
し ごと

(O\*)shigoto

job

→ See Appendix, Jobs

(お)国  
くに

(O)kuni

country

→ See Appendix, Countries



(ご\*)出身  
しゅっしん

(Go\*)shusshin

birth place/hometown

(お)名前  
なまえ

(O)namae

name

(お)住まい／(お)うち

(O)sumai / (O)uchi

home / place of residence

(お)勤め／会社

(O)tsutome / kaisha

company

\* Attaching the prefix お(o) or ご(go) to a noun makes that noun polite. Use these prefixes when talking about another person, and never for yourself. → See p.183, Grammar

Practice  
B-1

Place your own name and information in <      > to complete the following sentences.

鈴木 : <ジョン>さん、お国は？  
すずき くに

ジョン : <アメリカ>です。

鈴木 : お住まいは？  
すずき す

ジョン : <千葉>です。<鈴木>さんは？  
ちば すずき

鈴木 : 私も<千葉>です。／私は<東京>です。  
すずき わたし ちば とうきょう

ジョン : お仕事は？  
しごと

鈴木 : <主婦>です。  
すずき しゅふ

Suzuki : < Jon >-san, o-kuni wa?

Jon : < Amerika > desu.

Suzuki : O-sumai wa?

Jon : < Chiba > desu. < Suzuki >-san wa?

Suzuki : Watashi mo <Chiba> desu. /

Watashi wa < Tōkyō> desu.

Jon : O-shigoto wa?

Suzuki : < Shufu > desu.

Suzuki : Where are you from, John-san?

John : I'm from the United States.

Suzuki : Where do you live?

John : I live in Chiba. How about you, Suzuki-san?

Suzuki : I live in Chiba, too. /

I live in Tokyo.

John : What is your job?

Suzuki : I'm a housewife.

Practice  
B-2

Make your own conversation using the words in Practice A.

## MEMO

私も～です。／Watashi mo … desu.／I'm also ... .

## Phrase 3

Talk about your interests.

Track  
3

音楽が好きです。  
おんがく す

Ongaku ga suki desu.

I like music.

NOTE

"[Noun] ga suki desu" means "I like [noun]." → See p.169, Grammar  
In sentences like the examples below, the "watashi wa \_\_\_\_\_" portion of the sentence  
that denotes the subject is often omitted in spoken conversation.

Ex.

ジョン：(私は) 音楽が好きです。  
わたし おんがく す

でも、カラオケは好きじゃありません。

Jon : (Watashi wa) ongaku **ga suki desu.**

Demo, karaoke wa suki ja arimasen.

John : I like music.

But, I don't like karaoke.

Practice  
A

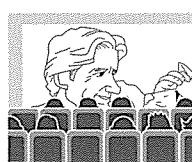
\_\_\_\_\_が好きです。

Use the following words with the phrase "\_\_\_\_\_ **ga suki desu.**"

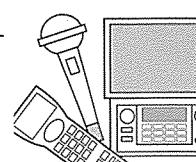
音楽  
おんがく  
ongaku  
music



映画  
えいが  
eiga  
movie



カラオケ  
karaoke  
karaoke



アウトドア  
autodoa  
the outdoors



旅行  
りょこう  
ryoko  
travel

→ See Appendix, Hobbies

サッカー  
sakkā  
soccer/football



→ See Appendix, Sports

(お)すし

(O)sushi

sushi

→ See Appendix, Food

ビール

bīru

beer

→ See Appendix, Drinks

イタリア料理

りょうり

Itaria ryōri

Italian food

→ See Appendix, Countries



Use words from Practice A in <      > to practice having a conversation.

1

鈴木 : 私は〈ビール〉が好きです。カレンさんは?  
 Suzuki : Watashi wa <biru> ga suki desu.  
 カレン : 私も好きです。／私はあまり好きじゃありません。  
 Karen : Watashi mo suki desu.  
 / Watashi wa amari suki ja arimasen.

Suzuki : I like beer. How about you, Karen-san?  
 Karen : I like beer, too. / I don't really like beer.

2

田中 : 〈カラオケ〉は\*好きですか。  
 Tanaka : < Karaoke > wa\* suki desu ka.  
 ジョン : はい、好きです。  
 /いいえ、〈カラオケ〉はあまり……。でも〈音楽〉は好きです。  
 Jon : Hai, suki desu.  
 / lie, < karaoke > wa amari....  
 Demo, < ongaku > wa suki desu.  
 Tanaka : Sō desu ka.

Tanaka : Do you like karaoke?  
 John : Yes, I do.  
 / No, not really. But, I like music.  
 Tanaka : I see.

\*は(wa) can be used to denote a topic or subject, it can also be used to imply a comparison or contrast. Because of this nuance, は(wa) often appears instead of が(ga) in statements that contain a nuance of comparison, such as negative or interrogative sentences, like in the example sentence above.

### MEMO

あまり / amari / not very much, not really

でも / demo / but

そうですか。/ Sō desu ka. / I see.

## Dialogue

Practice having a conversation by replacing the words in (1)–(3) with the words below. Put your own name and information in <      >.

ジョン：はじめまして。〈ジョン〉です。

Jon : Hajimemashite. < Jon > desu.

どうぞよろしく。

Dōzo yoroshiku.

田中：はじめまして。〈田中〉です。

Tanaka : Hajimemashite. < Tanaka > desu.

こちらこそ、どうぞよろしく

Kochira koso, dōzo yoroshiku

お願いします。

onegaishimasu.

ジョンさん、(1)お国は？

Jon-san, (1) o-kuni wa?

ジョン：〈アメリカ〉です。

Jon : < Amerika > desu.

田中：そうですか。(2)お住まいは？

Tanaka : Sō desu ka. (2) o-sumai wa?

ジョン：〈千葉〉です。〈田中さん〉は？

Jon : < Chiba > desu. < Tanaka >-san wa?

田中：私は〈中野〉です。

Tanaka : Watashi wa < Nakano > desu.

ジョンさん、(3)日本料理は好きですか。

Jon-san, (3) Nihon ryōri wa suki desu ka.

ジョン：はい、〈天ぷら〉が好きです。

Jon : Hai, < tempura > ga suki desu.

／いいえ、あまり……。

/ lie, amari.....

田中：そうですか。

Tanaka : Sō desu ka.

- ① (1) ご出身  
(2) お仕事  
(3) スポーツ

go-shusshin  
o-shigoto  
supōtsu

- ② (1) お国  
(2) お勤め  
(3) お酒

o-kuni  
o-tsutome  
o-sake

## Listening

Two people who just met are having a conversation. Listen to what they say and select the correct answer.

**Q1**



1. The man is English.
2. The man is Australian.
3. The man is Indian.

**Q2**



1. The woman asked the man for his name and hometown.
2. The woman asked the man where he works and lives.
3. The woman asked the man about his hometown and job.

**Q3**



1. The woman doesn't like karaoke.
2. The man likes karaoke.
3. The man doesn't like karaoke.

**Q4**



1. The woman likes wine.
2. The woman doesn't like alcohol.
3. The man likes beer.

## Role playing

Role play using the cards below.

At a party

**A:** You meet B-san, a Japanese person, for the first time at a friend's party. Say hello to B-san and introduce yourself. (Please use your own answers.)

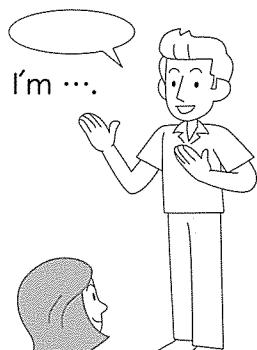
**B:** You are a Japanese person. Ask where A-san is from, where he/she works and lives in Japan, what he/she likes, and what his/her interests are.

## Do you remember?

Use the phrases you have learned in this unit in situations ①–③ below.

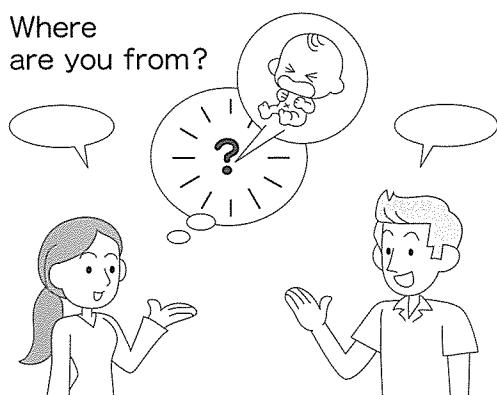
1

- Name
- Job
- Nationality



2

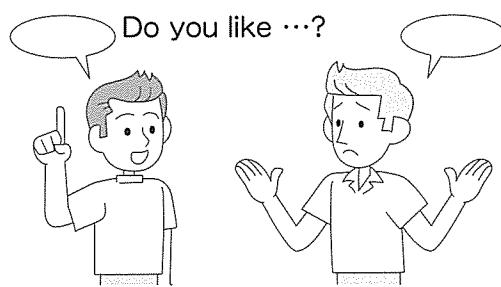
Where  
are you from?



3



Do you like ...?



## Phrases for This Unit

### Unit Phrases

- 私はジョンです。  
わたくし Jon desu. I am John.
- お仕事は？  
しごと O-shigoto wa? (What is) your job?
- 音楽が好きです。  
おんがく suki desu. I like music.

### Useful expressions

- ~からきました。  
き ... kara kimashita. I'm from ... .
- どうぞよろしく。  
Dōzo yoroshiku. It's nice to meet you.

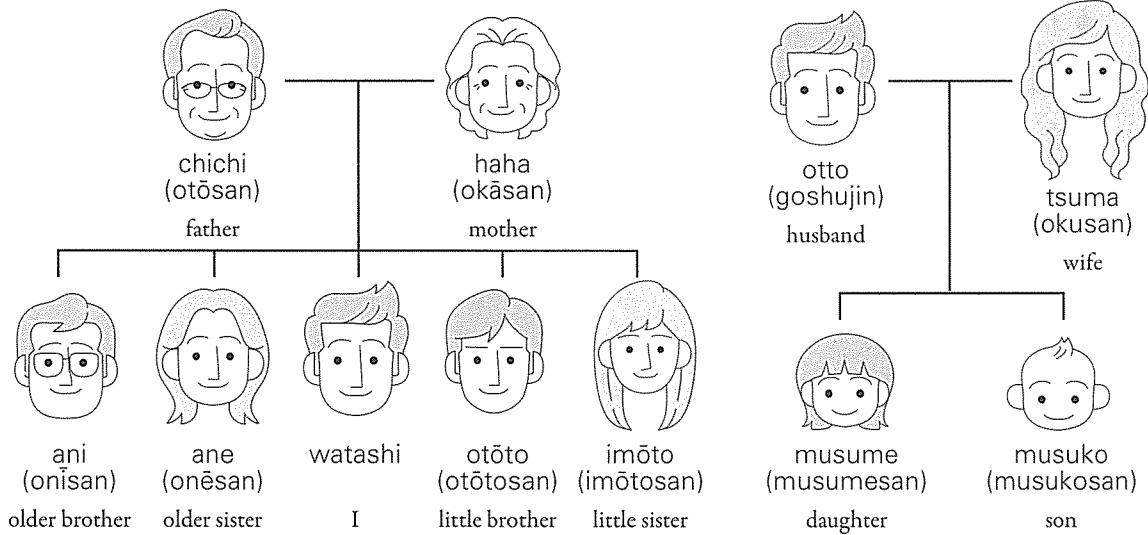
Check!

### ✓ Now I can...

- Provide a simple self-introduction
- Ask a person I just met for their name and occupation
- Have a conversation about hobbies and interests

## One More Step

### ● Talking about family



\* Words in ( ) are used to respectfully address another person's family members

### Let's practice

- (1) Use the examples below to describe where your family members are from (a), what they do (b), and where they live (c).

- Watashi no \*<sup>1</sup> tsuma wa Igirisu-jin desu.
- Watashi no haha wa kyōshi desu.
- Watashi no musuko wa Ōsutoraria ni sunde imasu. \*<sup>2</sup>

- (2) Fill in the blanks below to have a conversation about someone's siblings and children.

Q. Go-kyōdai\*<sup>3</sup> / okasan\*<sup>4</sup> ga imasu ka.\*<sup>5</sup>

- Hai, \_\_\_\_\_ to\*<sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ga imasu.
- Hai, \_\_\_\_\_ ga [number] imasu.
- lie, imasen.

#### Counting people

one person	hitori
two people	futari
three people	san-nin
four people	yo-nin

Say the number word + **nin** when counting three or more people

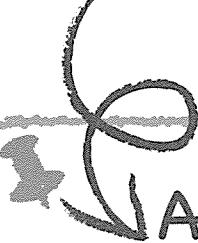
\*1 watashi no = my    \*2 ...wa [place] ni sunde imasu = ... live in [place]    \*3 go-kyōdai = (Your) brothers and sisters ("kyōdai" refers to one's own siblings)    \*4 okasan = (Your) children ("kodomo" refers to one's own children)    \*5 ... ga imasu ka. = Do you have ... ? (for animate objects)  
 → See p.170, Grammar    \*6 A to B = A and B



## Is there an ATM around here?

このへんに、ATMありますか。

Kono hen ni , ATM arimasu ka.



### Asking for directions

場所を尋ねる

### GOALS FOR UNIT 2

- Ask if a store or place you want to go to is in the nearby area
- Ask for the location of a store or place you want to go to
- Ask and understand simple directions

## Phrase 1

Ask if a store or place you want to go to is in the nearby area.

このへんに、ATMありますか。



**Kono hen ni, ATM arimasu ka.**

Is there an ATM around here?

**NOTE** “\_\_\_\_ (wa) arimasu ka.” = “Is there \_\_\_\_?”, “Kono hen ni” means “around here.” “Arimasu” is used only for inanimate objects. → See p.170, Grammar

### Ex.

ジョン : すみません。このへんに、ATM(は)ありますか。

女人 : ええ、あそこにありますよ。  
おんな ひと

Jon : Sumimasen. **Kono hen ni,**  
**ATM (wa) arimasu ka.**

Onna no hito : Ee, asoko ni arimasu yo.

John : Excuse me. Is there an ATM  
around here?

Woman : Yes, over there.



このへんに、\_\_\_\_ありますか。

Use the following words with the phrase “**Kono hen ni, \_\_\_\_ arimasu ka.**”

ATM

ATM

ATM

地下鉄の駅  
ちかてつえき

chikatetsu no eki

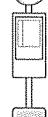
subway station

バス停  
ばすてい

basu-tei

bus stop

バス



交番  
こうばん

kōban

police box



駐車場  
ちゅうしゃじょう

chūshajō

parking lot



コンビニ

kombini

convenience store



→ See Appendix, Shops

インターネットカフェ

intānetto kafe

internet café

スーパー

sūpā

super market

100円ショップ  
えん

hyaku-en shoppu

100-yen store

薬屋

kusuri-ya

drugstore



Put the words from Practice A into <      > to complete the exercise.

1

-On a street-

ジョン : すみません。このへんに、〈コンビニ〉ありますか。

女人 : ええ、あそこにありますよ。

ジョン : ありがとうございます。

女人 : どういたしまして。

Jon : Sumimasen. Kono hen ni  
<kombini> arimasu ka.

Onna no hito : Ee, asoko ni arimasu yo.

Jon : Arigatō gozaimasu.

Onna no hito : Dō itashimashite.

John : Excuse me, is there a convenience store  
around here?

Woman : Yes, it's over there.

John : Thank you.

Woman : You're welcome.

2

-On a street-

ジョン : すみません。このへんに、〈薬屋〉ありますか。

男人 : さあ、ちょっとわかりません。

ジョン : じゃ、いいです。ありがとうございます。

Jon : Sumimasen. Kono hen ni  
<kusuri-ya> arimasu ka.

Otoko no hito : Sā, chotto wakarimasen.

Jon : Ja, ii desu. Arigatō gozaimasu.

John : Excuse me, is there a drug store around here?

Man : Hmm, I'm not sure [if there is].

John : That's alright. Thank you.

MEMO

ええ / ee / yes

あそこにありますよ。/ Asoko ni arimasu yo. / It's over there. \*The particle "yo" is used to emphasize new information to a person.

どういたしまして。/ Dō itashimashite. / You're welcome.

さあ / sā / I don't know. [said to indicate a lack of sureness]

ちょっとわかりません。/ Chotto wakarimasen. / I'm not sure.

じゃ、いいです。/ Ja, ii desu. / That's alright.

## Phrase 2

Ask where something is.

トイレ、どこですか。

Toire, doko desu ka.

Where is the restroom?



**NOTE**

"Doko" means "where.", "\_\_\_\_(wa) doko desu ka." is used to ask for the location of something.

### Ex.

ジョン :すみません。トイレ(は)どこですか。

店員 :こちらです。

Jon : Sumimasen. Toire (wa) doko desu ka.

Ten'in : Kochira desu.

John : Excuse me. Where is the restroom?

Clerk : This way.

**Practice**  
**A-1**

\_\_\_\_\_、どこですか。

Use the following words with the phrase "\_\_\_\_, doko desu ka."

トイレ

toire

restroom



レジ

reji

cash register



エレベーター

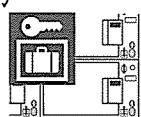
erebētā

elevator

コインロッカー

koin rokkā

coin locker



入り口

iriguchi

entrance

本屋

ほんや

hon-ya

bookstore

→ See Appendix, Shops

**Practice**  
**A-2**

\_\_\_\_\_です。

Answer the questions from above using the following words with the phrase "\_\_\_\_ desu."

ここ／こちら\*

koko / kochira\*

here / this way

そこ／そちら\*

soko / sochira\*

there / that way

あそこ／あちら\*

asoko / achira\*

over there / that way

1階  
いっかい

ikkai  
first floor

2階  
にかい

ni-kai  
second floor

3階  
さんかい

san-kai\*  
third floor

4階  
よんかい

yon-kai  
fourth floor

\* "San-gai"(third floor) and "nan-gai"(what floor) are also being used.  
Please see Counters on p.178 of Grammar for counting floors higher than 4.

Practice  
B-1

Have a practice conversation using the words from practice A-1 and A-2 in < >

ジョン :すみません、^A-1<トイレ>、どこですか。

店員 :^A-2<あちら>です。

ジョン :ありがとうございます。

Jon : Sumimasen, ^A-1< toire >, doko desu ka.

Ten'in : ^A-2< Achira > desu.

Jon : Arigatō gozaimasu.

John : Excuse me, where is the restroom?

Clerk : It's over that way.

John : Thank you.

Practice  
B-2

Ask what floor the following shops are on with the conversation pattern below.

1. Bookstore    2. 100-yen store    3. Restaurants

-At the reception desk-

ジョン :すみません、< >は何階ですか。  
なんかい

受付 :< >でございます。

ジョン :え？ もう一度いいですか。  
いちど

受付 :< >です。

Jon : Sumimasen, < > wa nan-kai desu ka.

Uketsuke :< > de gozaimasu.

Jon : E? Mō ichido ii desu ka.

Uketsuke :< > desu.

4F Restaurants

3F Bookstore

2F 100-yen store

1F Reception / Front desk

John : Excuse me, what floor is the < > on?

Clerk : It's on the < >.

John : Pardon? Would you say that one more time?

Clerk : It's < >.

MEMO

もう一度いいですか。/ Mō ichido ii desu ka. / Would you say that one more time?

~は何階ですか。/ ... wa nan-kai desu ka. / What floor is the ... on?

## Phrase 3

Gather information about a place you are trying to go.

Track  
11

郵便局に行きたいんですが……。  
ゆうびんきょく い

Yūbinkyoku ni ikitai n desu ga..... I'm trying to get to the post office.

NOTE

"\_\_ ni ikitai" means "I would like to go to \_\_" or "I am trying to get to \_\_". "<\_\_ n desu ga" frequently precedes a sentence requesting information, but because this nuance is so obvious from context, the rest of the sentence following "\_\_ n desu ga" is often left out.

### Ex.

ジョン : すみません。郵便局に行きたいんですが……。  
ゆうびんきょく い

警察官 : あの公園の左ですよ。  
けいさつかん こうえん ひだり

Jon : Sumimasen. Yūbinkyoku ni  
ikitai n desu ga..... .  
Keisatsu-kan : Ano kōen no hidari desu yo.

John : Excuse me, I'm trying to get to the post  
office, but....  
Policeman : It's to the left of that park.

Practice  
A-1

\_\_\_\_\_に行きたいんですが……。

Use the following words with the phrase "\_\_\_\_ ni ikitai n desu ga..... ."

郵便局

yūbinkyoku

post office



映画館

eigakan

movie theater



銀行

ginkō

bank



動物園

dōbutsu-en

zoo

公園

kōen

park

病院

byōin

hospital

美術館

bijutsukan

art museum

Practice  
A-2

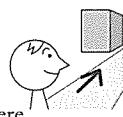
\_\_\_\_\_ですよ。

Answer the questions from above using the following words with the phrase "\_\_\_\_ desu yo."

ここまっすぐ

koko massugu

straight up / down here



あっち

acchi

over that way



むこう

mukō

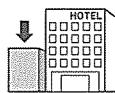
over there



● UNIT 2 Is there an ATM around here? - Asking for directions ●

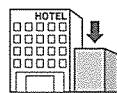
～の左  
ひだり

-no hidari  
to the left of



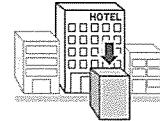
～の右  
みぎ

-no migi  
to the right of



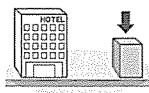
～の前  
まえ

-no mae  
in front of



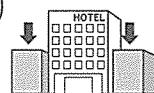
～の近く  
ちか

-no chikaku  
near



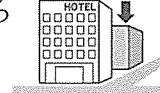
～のとなり  
となり

-no tonari  
next to



～のうしろ  
うしろ

-no ushiro  
behind



Look at the map on p. 33 and ask for items 1-4 with the conversation template below.

Ex. ふじ病院 Fuji byōin

1. 本屋 hon-ya 2. 映画館 eigakan 3. さくらホテル Sakura hoteru 4. 郵便局 yūbinkyoku

ジョン : すみません、<ふじ病院>に行きたいんですが……。

警察官 : <ここまっすぐ>ですよ。／ <美術館の前>ですよ。

ジョン : 近いですか。

警察官 : はい、近いですよ。／いいえ、ちょっと遠いですよ。

Jon : Sumimasen, <Fuji byōin>  
ni ikitai n desu ga... .

Keisatsu-kan : <Koko massugu> desu yo.  
/ < Bijutsukan no mae > desu yo.

Jon : Chikai desu ka.

Keisatsu-kan : Hai, chikai desu yo.  
/ lie, chotto tōi desu yo.

John : Excuse me, I'm trying to get to Fuji Hospital.

Policeman : It's straight down here. / It's in front of the museum.

John : Is it near here?

Policeman : Yes. / No, it's a little far.

MEMO

近いですか。/ Chikai desu ka. / Is it near here?

ちょっと遠いですよ。/ Chotto tōi desu yo. / It's a little far.

**Dialogue**

Look at the picture on the right page and have a practice conversation replacing the words in (1) - (4).

-In front of a station-

**クマール** :すみません。

Kumāru : Sumimasen.

**女人** :はい。

Onna no hito : Hai.

**クマール** :(1) さくら公園に行きたいんです  
が……。

Kumāru : (1) Sakura kōen ni ikitai n desu ga..... .

**女人** :えっと……、ここまっすぐですよ。

Onna no hito: Etto....., koko massugu desu yo.

**クマール** :そうですか。あ、それから、この  
へんに、(2)ATMありますか。

Kumāru : Sō desu ka. A, sorekara, kono hen ni (2) ATM arimasu ka.

**女人** :そうですね……。

Onna no hito : Sō desu ne..... .

あ、(3)コンビニにありますよ。

A, (3) kombini ni arimasu yo.

**クマール** :(3) コンビニはどこですか。

Kumāru : (3) Kombini wa doko desu ka.

**女人** :(4) さくら公園の前です。

Onna no hito : (4) Sakura kōen no mae desu.

**クマール** :ありがとうございます。

Kumāru : Arigatō gozaimasu.

- ① (1) ふじ病院  
(2) 花屋  
(3) スーパー  
(4) 病院の近く

Fuji byōin  
hana-ya (= flower shop)  
sūpā  
byōin no chikaku

- ② (1) 現代美術館  
(2) コインロッカー  
(3) 地下鉄の駅  
(4) バス停のむこう

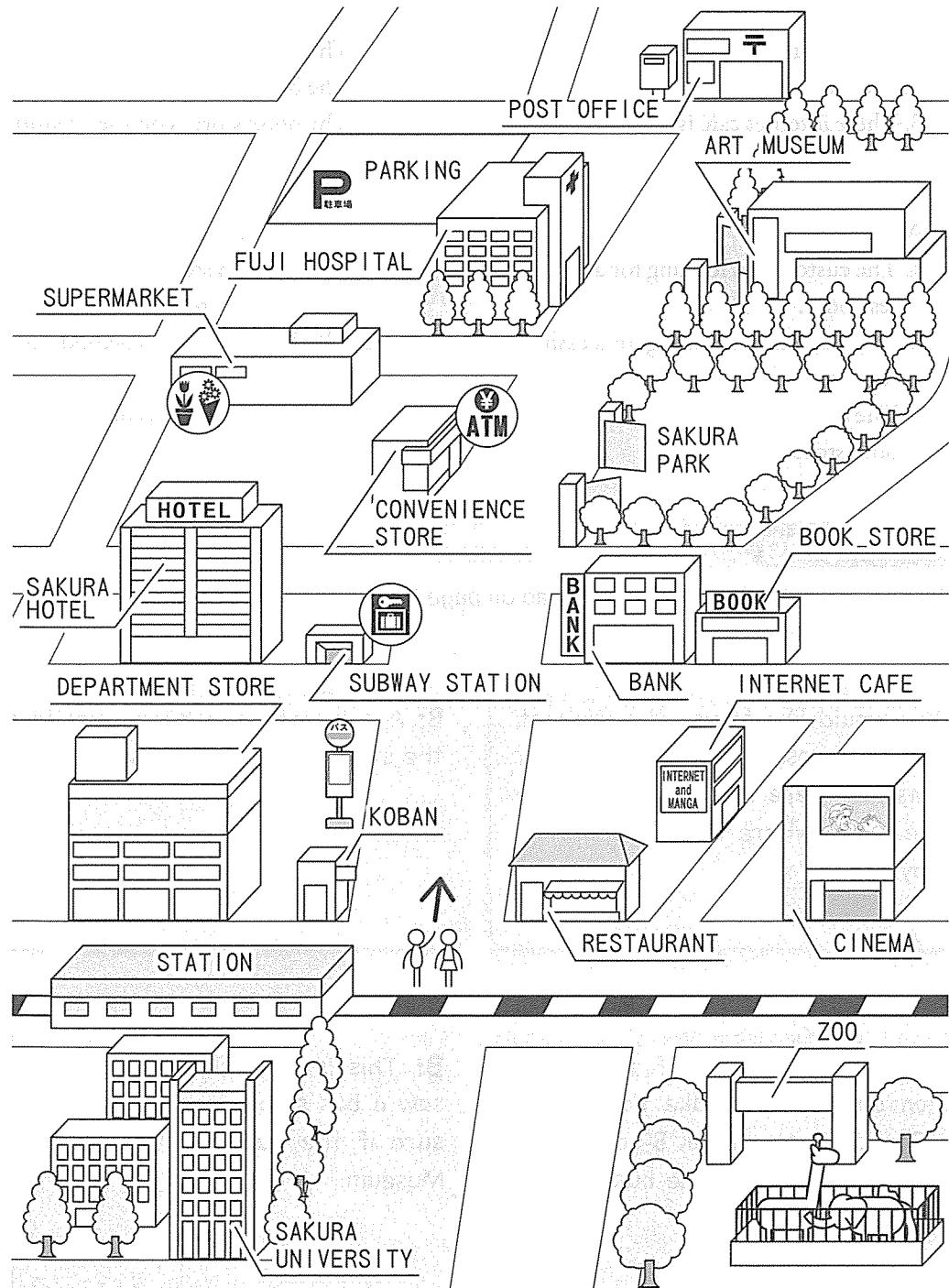
Gendai bijutsukan (= Modern art museum)  
koin rokkā  
chikatetsu no eki  
basu-tei no mukō

**MEMO**

それから / sorekara / and (Used when uttering an additional statement or question.)

## Material

Look at the map while doing the practice conversation on the left page.



## Listening

Listen to the conversation between the man and woman and choose the correct answer.

**Q1** On the street

- Track 13
1. The internet café is over there.
  2. The internet café is right here.
  3. There internet café is straight down here.

**Q2** At a supermarket

- Track 14
1. The customer is looking for a restroom.
  2. The customer is looking for a cash register.
  3. The customer is looking for a bookstore.

**Q3** At a department store

- Track 15
1. The book store is on the third floor.
  2. The book store is on the second floor.
  3. The book store is on the ground floor.

**Q4** On the street

- Track 16
1. The 100-yen store is in front of the convenience store.
  2. The 100-yen store is behind the convenience store.
  3. The 100-yen store is next to the convenience store.

## Role playing

Role play using the cards below. → See the map on page 33.

1.

**A:** You would like to use the internet. You come across B-san in the street and ask if there is an internet café in the area, where it is, and if it is nearby.

**B:** A-san stops to ask you questions in the street. Answer A-san's questions.

2.

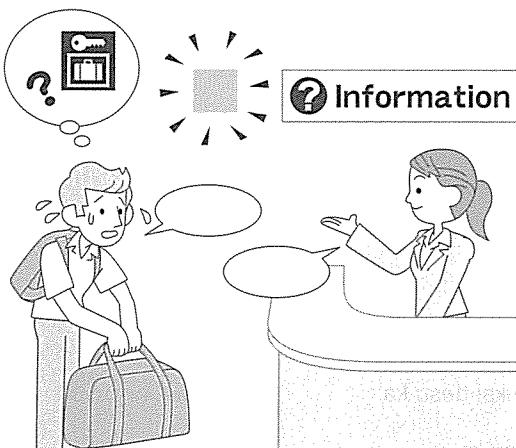
**A:** You are in front of the train station and want to take the bus to the Gendai Museum. Ask B-san where the bus stop is and if the bus goes to the museum.

**B:** This is your first time here. You saw a bus stop nearby, but you're not sure if the bus goes to the Gendai Museum.

## Do you remember?

Use the phrases you have studied in this unit in situations ①–③ below.

①



②



③



## Phrases for This Unit

### Unit Phrases

- このへんに、ATM ありますか。 Kono hen ni, ATM arimasuka. Is there an ATM around here?
- トイレ、どこですか。 Toire, doko desu ka. Where is the restroom?
- 郵便局に行きたいんですが……。 Yūbinkyoku ni ikitai n desu ga..... . I'm trying to go to the post office.

### Useful expressions

- じゃ、いいです。 Ja, ii desu. That's alright.
- もう一度いいですか。 Mō ichido ii desu ka. Would you say that one more time?
- ~は何階ですか。 ...wa nan-kai desu ka. What floor is the ... on?
- 近いですか。 Chikai desu ka. Is it near here?
- それから、~ sorekara, ... and [Used when uttering an additional statement or question.]

Check!

### ✓ Now I can...

- Ask if the store or place I want to go to is in the nearby area
- Ask for the location of the store or place I want to go to
- Ask and understand simple directions



## How much is this?

これ、いくらですか。

Kore, ikura desu ka.

### Shopping

買い物

#### GOALS FOR UNIT 3

- Ask if a store has what you are looking for
- Ask for the price of something you want to buy
- Request what you would like from a store

## Phrase 1

Ask if a store has what you want to buy.

Track  
17

かさ、ありますか。

Kasa, arimasu ka.

Do you have umbrellas?

**NOTE** “\_\_\_ (wa) arimasu ka.” was introduced as a way to ask if something exists in Unit 2.  
It can also mean “Do you have \_\_\_?” → See p.170, Grammar

### Ex.

ジョン :すみません。かさ(は)ありますか。

店員 :はい、あります。こちらです。

Jon : Sumimasen. Kasa (wa) arimasu ka.

Ten'in : Hai, arimasu. Kochira desu.

John : Excuse me, do you have umbrellas?

Clerk : Yes, we do. They're right here.

Practice  
**A**

\_\_\_\_\_、ありますか。

Use the following words with the phrase “\_\_\_, arimasu ka.”

かさ

kasa

umbrella



英語の新聞

えいご しんぶん

Eigo no shimbun

English newspaper



ボールペン

bōru-pen

ball point pen

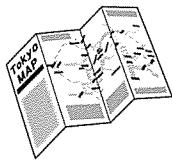
→ See Appendix, Stationery



地図

chizu

map



(お\*)水

みず

(o\*)mizu

water



(お)酒

さけ

(o)sake

alcoholic drink/Japanese sake



牛乳

ぎゅうにゅう

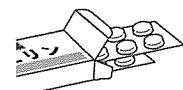
milk

塩

しお

salt

→ See Appendix, Seasoning



薬

くすり

kusuri

medicine

→ See Appendix, Medicine

\* The prefix “o-” makes nouns more polite. → See p.183, Grammar

Practice  
B

Put the words from A in <      > to complete the conversation exercise.

1

ジョン : すみません。<かさ>、ありますか。

店員 : はい、こちらです。

ジョン : ありがとうございます。

Jon : Sumimasen. <Kasa>, arimasu ka.

Ten'in : Hai, kochira desu.

Jon : Arigatō gozaimasu.

John : Excuse me. Do you have umbrellas?

Clerk : Yes. They're right here.

John : Thank you.

2

ジョン : すみません。<英語の新聞>、ありますか。

店員 : 申し訳ありません。<英語の新聞>は、ないです。

ジョン : わかりました。

Jon : Sumimasen. < Eigo no shimbun >, arimasu ka.

Ten'in : Mōshiwake arimasen. < Eigo no shimbun > wa, naindesu.

Jon : Wakarimashita.

John : Excuse me. Do you have English newspaper?

Clerk : I'm sorry, but we don't [have any English newspapers].

John : Okay.

## MEMO

申し訳ありません。/ Mōshiwake arimasen. / I'm sorry. ["I have no excuse"; extremely polite]

ないです。/ Naindesu. / "...n desu" can be used to make a negative answer softer.

"Naindesu" = "We don't have it".

## Phrase 2

Ask how much something costs.

Track  
18

これ、いくらですか。

Kore, ikura desu ka.

How much is this?

**NOTE** "Ikura" means "how much." "\_\_\_ (wa) ikura desu ka." means "How much is \_\_\_?" and is used to ask how much something costs.

### Ex.

ジョン : これ(は) いくらですか。

店員 : 500円です。  
てんいん ごひゃくえん

Jon : Kore (wa) ikura desu ka.

Ten'in : 500 [gohyaku]-en desu.

John : How much is this?

Clerk : It's 500 yen.

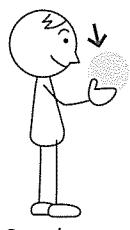
Practice  
A-1

\_\_\_、いくらですか。

Let's use the following words with the phrase "\_\_\_, ikura desu ka."

これ

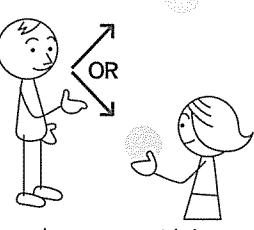
kore  
this



Speaker

それ

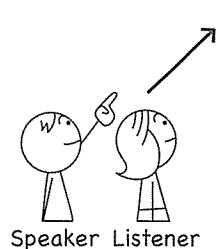
sore  
that / it



Speaker

あれ

are  
that



Speaker Listener

\* Please see Demonstratives on p.170 of Grammar.

**A-2**

Study the numbers from 10 to 10,000 (→see p. 47) and say the following prices in (1) – (7) with the phrase “\_\_\_\_\_-en desu.”

- (1) ¥ 55 (2) ¥ 99 (3) ¥ 270 (4) ¥ 360 (5) ¥ 890 (6) ¥ 1,500 (7) ¥ 2,700

**B**

Practice talking about prices with the pictures below.

ジョン : すみません。〈ノート〉、いくらですか。

店員 : <90円> です。  
てんいん  
えん

Jon : Sumimasen. < Nōto >, ikura desu ka.

Ten'in : < 90-en > desu.

John : Excuse me. How much is this notebook?

Clerk : It's 90 yen.

Ex. ノート

nōto  
notebook



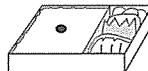
① ペン

pen  
pen



② お弁当

o-bentō  
bento-box



③ タオル

taoru  
towel



④ 時計

tokei  
clock



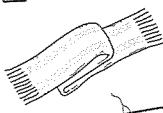
⑤ バッグ  
かばん

baggu/kaban  
bag



⑥ マフラー

mafurā  
scarf



⑦ くつ

kutsu  
shoes



## Phrase 3

Make a purchase.

このTシャツ、ください。

Kono T-shatsu, kudasai.

I'll have this T-shirt.

Track  
19

**NOTE** “\_\_\_\_\_ (o) kudasai.” means “Please give me \_\_\_\_\_.” and is used when making a purchase. “Kono” is always used before a noun. “Kore” means “this” and is also used before “kudasai”.

### Ex.

- ① すみません。このTシャツ(を)ください。
- ② すみません。これ(を)ふたつください。

- ① Sumimasen. Kono T-shatsu (o) kudasai.
- ② Sumimasen. Kore (o) futatsu kudasai.

John : Excuse me. I'll have this T-shirt.

John : Excuse me. I'll have two of these.

Practice  
**A-1**

\_\_\_\_\_、ください。

Use the following words with the phrase “\_\_\_\_\_ , kudasai.”

このTシャツ

kono T-shatsu

this T-shirt

Listener

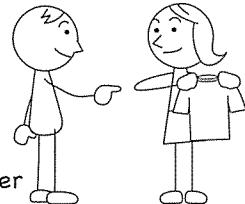


そのTシャツ

sono T-shatsu

that T-shirt

Listener



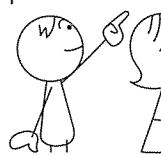
あのTシャツ

ano T-shatsu

that T-shirt



Speaker



Listener

これ

kore

this

それ

sore

that/it

あれ

are

that

Practice  
A-2

これ、\_\_ください。

Say how many of each item you want with the phrase "Kore, \_\_ kudasai."

ひとつ

hitotsu

one

ふたつ

futatsu

two

みっつ

mittsu

three

よっつ

yottsu

four

\* 5 = itsutsu, 6 = muttsu, 7 = nanatsu, 8 = yattsu, 9 = kokonotsu, 10 = tō

Saying the number word with "ko" can also be used to count objects. → See p.178, Grammar

Practice  
B

Put the words from Practice A-1 and A-2 into &lt;      &gt; to complete the conversation below.

ジョン : すみません。<sup>A-1</sup> <このTシャツ>、<sup>A-2</sup> <ふたつ> ください。店員 : はい。ありがとうございます。  
てんいんジョン : あ、それから、<sup>A-1</sup> <これ> もください。店員 : かしこまりました。  
てんいんジョン : カードでお願いします。<sup>\*</sup>  
ねが店員 : お支払い方法は?  
しはら ほうほうジョン : 一回で。  
いつかい

\* It is usually paid by cash if neither you nor the shop staff say anything about the way of the payment.

Jon : Sumimasen. <sup>A-1</sup> < Kono T-shatsu >,  
<sup>A-2</sup> < futatsu > kudasai.

Ten'in : Hai. Arigatō gozaimasu.

Jon : A, sorekara, <sup>A-1</sup> < kore > mo kudasai.

Ten'in : Kashikomari mashita.

Jon : Kādo de onegai shimasu.\*

Ten'in : Oshiharai hōhō wa?

Jon : Ikkai de.

John : Excuse me, I'll have two of these T-shirts.

Clerk : Okay. Thank you.

John : And I'll take this, too.

Clerk : Alright.

John : I'd like to pay by credit card.\*

Clerk : How many payments would you like to make?

John : One, please.

## MEMO

それから、～もください。/ Sorekara, ...mo kudasai. / And I'll have ... , too.

かしこまりました。/ Kashikomarimashita. / Certainly/Yes/Right away.

カードでお願いします。/ Kādo de onegaishimasu. / I'd like to pay by credit card.

お支払い方法は? / Oshiharai hōhō wa? / How many payments will you make? ["What is your payment method?"]

一回で。/ Ikkai de. / One/Once, please.

## Phrase 4

Making requests at a store.

Track  
20

もうちょっと安いの、ありませんか。  
やす

**Mō chotto yasui no, arimasen ka.** Do you have one a little cheaper?

NOTE

"Mō chotto" means "a little more" and can be used with adjectives. "Mō chotto \_\_\_ no arimasen ka." is often used to make a request while shopping. Although "arimasen ka" can also be used in the affirmative, is considered more polite to ask with a negative form.

Ex.

ジョン : もうちょっと安いの(は)ありますか。  
やす

店員 : こちらはいかがですか。  
でんいん

Jon : **Mō chotto yasui no (wa) arimasen ka.**

Ten'in : Kochira wa ikaga desu ka.

John : Do you have one a little  
cheaper?

Clerk : How about this one?

Practice  
A

もうちょっと\_\_\_の、ありますか。

Let's use the following words with the phrase "**Mō chotto \_\_\_ no, arimasen ka.**"

安い  
やす

yasui  
cheap

大きい  
おお

ōkii  
big

小さい  
ちい

chiisai  
small

軽い  
かる

karui  
light/light weight

長い  
なが

nagai  
long

短い  
みじか

mijikai  
short

他の\*メーカー  
ほか

hoka no\* mēkā  
another makers

他の\*色  
ほか いろ

hoka no\* iro  
another colors  
→ See Appendix, Colors

\* You don't use "mō chotto" with "hoka no" (another, the other).

Practice  
B-1

Put the words from Practice A in <      > and practice the conversation below.

-Looking at something in a shop-

ジョン : すみません。これ、もうちょっと<安い>の、ありませんか。

店員 : すみません。これだけなんです。

ジョン : そうですか。じゃあ、ちょっと考えます。

Jon : Sumimasen. Kore, mō chotto  
<yasui>no arimasen ka.

Ten'in : Sumimasen. Kore dake nan desu.

Jon : Sō desu ka. Jā, chotto kangaemasu.

John : Excuse me. Do you have a cheaper one of  
these?

Clerk : I'm sorry, this is all we have.

John : Okay, I'll think about it then.

Practice  
B-2

Study the numbers from 10 to 100,000 (p. 47) and practice the conversation with the words below.

ジョン : すみません。この<自転車>、いくらですか。

店員 : <10980>円です。

Jon : Sumimasen. Kono <jitensha>, ikura  
desu ka.

Ten'in : <10980>-en desu.

John : Excuse me. How much is this bicycle?

Clerk : It's 10,980 yen.

Ex. 自転車  
jitensha

bicycle



① 携帯  
keitai

cellular phone



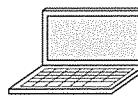
② 電子辞書  
denshi-jisho

electronic dictionary



③ パソコン  
pasokon

personal computer



## MEMO

こちらはいかがですか。/ Kochira wa ikaga desu ka. / How about this one?

これだけなんです。/ Kore dake nan desu. / This is all we have.

じゃあ、ちょっと考えます。/ Jā, chotto kangaemasu. / I'll think about it then.

**Dialogue**

Look at the picture on the right page and have a practice conversation replacing the words in (1) – (5).

ジョン : すみません。

Jon : Sumimasen.

(1) Tシャツ, ありますか。

(1) T-shatsu, arimasu ka.

店員 : はい、ございます。こちらです。

Ten'in : Hai, gozaimasu. Kochira desu.

ジョン : それはいくらですか。

Jon : Sore wa ikura desu ka.

店員 : (2) 3900円です。

Ten'in : (2) 3900-en desu.

ジョン : (3) もうちょっと安いの,  
ありますか。

Jon : (3) Mō chotto yasui no,  
arimasen ka.

店員 : (4) こちらは1980円です。

Ten'in : (4) Kochira wa 1980-en desu.

ジョン : じゃあ、(5) それ、みつください。

Jon : Jā, (5) sore, mitsu kudasai.

店員 : ありがとうございます。

Ten'in : Arigatō gozaimasu.

① (1) 水

mizu

(2) 150円

150-en

(3) もうちょっと小さい

Mō chotto chiisai

(4) こちらは100円です

Kochira wa 100-en desu

(5) それ、ひとつ

sore, hitotsu

② (1) デジカメ

dejikame

(2) 29800円

29800-en

(3) 他の色

Hoka no iro

(4) 青いのと黒いのがあります

Aoi no to kuroi no ga arimasu

(5) 黒いの

kuroi no

**MEMO**

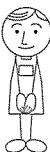
ございます。/ Gozaimasu. / [A politer way to say “arimasu (=have)”]

**Material**

- 1** Look at the pictures below and complete the practice conversation on the left page.

Irasshaimase.

Ex.



¥3,900



¥1,980



¥4,500



¥1,980×3,  
please.

①



¥150



¥200



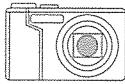
¥100



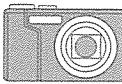
Small one,  
please.

②

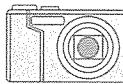
White



Black



Blue



Black one,  
please.

- 2** Counting 1 – 100,000

1-10	11-20	10-100	100-1,000	1,000-10,000	10,000-100,000
1 ichi	11 jū-ichi	10 jū	100 hyaku	1,000 sen	10,000 ichi-man
2 ni	12 jū-ni	20 ni-jū	200 ni-hyaku	2,000 ni-sen	20,000 ni-man
3 san	13 jū-san	30 san-jū	300 sambyaku	3,000 san-zen	30,000 sam-man
4 yon/shi	14 jū-yon	40 yon-jū	400 yon-hyaku	4,000 yon-sen	40,000 yon-man
5 go	15 jū-go	50 go-jū	500 go-hyaku	5,000 go-sen	50,000 go-man
6 roku	16 jū-roku	60 roku-jū	600 roppyaku	6,000 roku-sen	60,000 roku-man
7 nana/shichi	17 jū-nana	70 nana-jū	700 nana-hyaku	7,000 nana-sen	70,000 nana-man
8 hachi	18 jū-hachi	80 hachi-jū	800 happyaku	8,000 hassen	80,000 hachi-man
9 kyū/ku	19 jū-kyū	90 kyū-jū	900 kyū-hyaku	9,000 kyū-sen	90,000 kyū-man
10 jū	20 ni-jū	100 hyaku	1,000 sen	10,000 ichi-man	100,000 jū-man

## Listening

Listen to the conversation between the man and woman and choose the correct answer.

**Q1** At a convenience store

-  22  
1. They don't have newspapers.  
2. They have cigarettes (Tabako).  
3. They don't have cigarettes (Tabako).

**Q2** At a kiosk

-  23  
1. The umbrella is 400 yen.  
2. The umbrella is 600 yen.  
3. The umbrella is 800 yen.

**Q3** Inside a *shinkansen*

-  24  
1. The man wants a bento box.  
2. The man wants 2 bento boxes.  
3. The man wants 3 bento boxes.

**Q4** At a department store

-  25  
1. The woman wants a bigger one.  
2. The woman wants a cheaper one.  
3. The woman wants a smaller one.

## Role playing

Role play using the cards below.

1. At an electronics store

**A:** You are at an electronics store. Ask if they have a battery charger (jūdenki) for your cellular phone, how much it costs, and if they have one that costs less.

**B:** You are a clerk at an electronics store. The store has chargers for 1,000 and 1,500 yen. If asked about prices, first recommend the more expensive model.

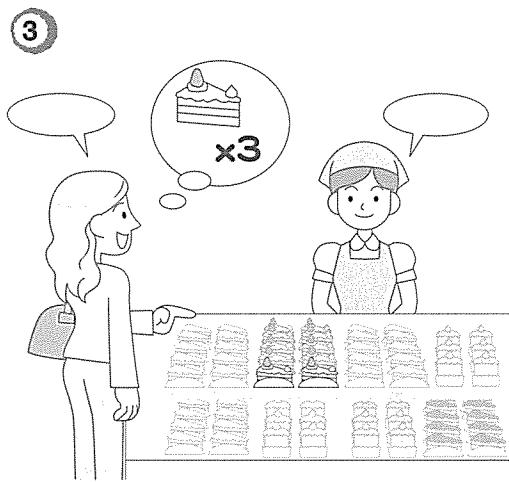
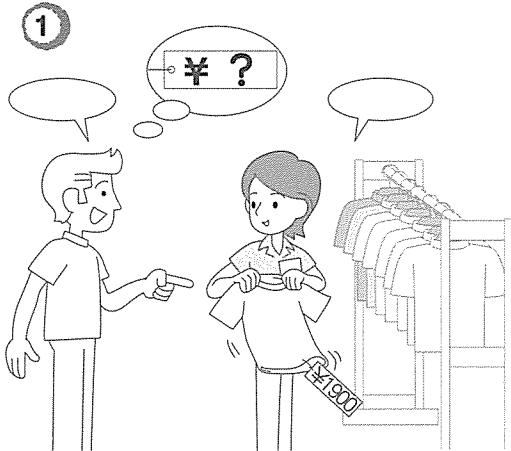
2. At a bookstore

**A:** You are at a bookstore and want to buy a map of Tokyo. Ask the clerk for a Tokyo map, how much it is, and if they have any bigger ones. You will also need a receipt.

**B:** You work at a bookstore. The store has a small map for 500 yen and big map for 800 yen. If asked, first recommend the smaller map.

## Do you remember?

Use the phrases you have studied in this unit in situations ①–④ below.



## Phrases for This Unit

### Unit Phrases

- かさ、ありますか。 Kasa, arimasu ka? Do you have umbrellas?
- これ、いくらですか。 Kore, ikura desu ka? How much is this?
- このTシャツ、ください。 Kono T-shatsu, kudasai. I'll have this T-shirt.
- もうちょっと安いの、  
ありますか。  
やす Mō chotto yasui no, arimasen ka. Do you have one a little cheaper?

### Useful expressions

- ちょっと考えます。 Chotto kangaemasu. I will think about it.
- お支払い方法は?  
しはら ほうほう O-shiharai hōhō wa? How many payments would you like to make?  
— 一回で。  
いつかい — Ikkai de. — One.
- それから、これもください。 Sorekara, kore mo kudasai. I'll take this, too.

Check!

Now I can...

- Ask if a store has what I am looking for
- Ask for the price of something I want to buy
- Request what I would like from a store



# Take out, please.

持ち帰りで。  
も  
かえ

Mochikaeri de.

## Convenience stores and restaurants

コンビニ・レストラン

### GOALS FOR UNIT 4

- Make orders at restaurants
- Request and ask about items on the menu
- Communicate with people at convenience stores and restaurants

## Phrase 1

Make a request at a restaurant.

Track  
26

メニュー、お願いします。  
ねが

Menyū, onegaishimasu.

Could I have a menu?

**NOTE** “[Noun] (o) onegaishimasu” is used when ordering food and making a request to receive something or have something done. A counter word can optionally come after the noun. → See p.43 and p.178, Counters

### Ex.

- ① すみません。メニュー (を) お願いします。  
ねが
- ② カレー (を) ひとつ、お願いします。  
ねが

- ① Sumimasen. Menyū (o) onegaishimasu.  
② Karē (o) hitotsu, onegaishimasu.

- ① Excuse me. Could I have a menu?  
② One curry, please.

Practice  
A-1

\_\_\_\_\_、お願いします。  
ねが

Use the following words with the phrase “\_\_\_\_\_, onegaishimasu.”

メニュー

menyū

menu

注文

ちゅうもん

chūmon

order

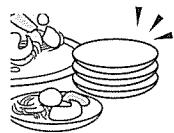
おしほり

oshibori

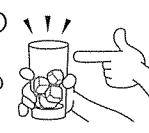


rolled wet towel  
[used to wash one's hands]

取り皿  
と さら  
torizara  
small plate



これと同じの  
おな  
kore to onaji no  
the same as this



グラス  
gurasu  
glass



スプーン／フォーク  
supūn / fōku  
spoon / fork

カレー  
karē  
curry with rice  
→ See Appendix, Food

生ビール  
なま  
nama biru  
draft beer  
→ See Appendix, Drinks

Practice  
A-2

[A-1] \_\_\_\_\_、お願いします。

Ask for words in Practice A-1 in the quantities below using "[A-1] \_\_\_\_\_, onegaishimasu."

ひとつ  
hitotsu  
one

ふたつ  
futatsu  
two

みっつ  
mittsu  
three

よっつ  
yottsu  
four

\* 5 = itsutsu, 6 = muttsu, 7 = nanatsu, 8 = yattsu, 9 = kokonotsu, 10 = tō

→ See p.178, Grammar

Practice  
B

Put the words from Practice A-1 and A-2 into &lt;      &gt; to complete the conversation below.

店員 : ご注文、お決まりですか。  
てんいん ちゅうもん きジョン : はい。<sup>A-1</sup>〈カレー〉<sup>A-2</sup>〈ひとつ〉と<sup>A-1</sup>〈生ビール〉<sup>A-2</sup>〈ひとつ〉、お願いします。  
なま ねが店員 : 以上でよろしいですか。  
てんいん いじょうジョン : はい、以上で。あ、あとお水もらえますか。  
いじょう みず店員 : かしこまりました。  
てんいん

Ten'in : Go-chūmon, o-kimari desu ka.

Jon : Hai, <sup>A-1</sup><Karē><sup>A-2</sup><hitotsu> to  
<sup>A-1</sup><nama bīru><sup>A-2</sup><hitotsu>, onegaishimasu.

Ten'in : Ijō de yoroshii desu ka.

Jon : Hai, ijō de. A, ato o-mizu moraemasu ka.

Ten'in : Kashikomarimashita.

Waiter : Are you ready to order?

John : Yes. I'll have one curry and one draft beer, please.

Waiter : Will that be all for you?

John : Yes, that's all. Oh, could I also have some water?

Waiter : Right away.

## MEMO

(ご注文)お決まりですか。/(Go-chūmon,) o-kimari desu ka./Are you ready to order?

以上でよろしいですか。/ijō de yoroshii desu ka./Will that be all for you?

以上で。/ijō de./That's all.

あと~/ato.../also...

~もらえますか。/...moraemasu ka./Could I have ...?

かしこまりました。/Kashikomarimashita./Certainly/Yes/Right away.

## Phrase 2

Ask about things you don't understand or don't know about.

Track  
27

今日のランチ、なんですか。  
きょう

Kyō no ranchi, nan desu ka.

What's the lunch of the day?

NOTE "Nan" means "what." " \_\_(wa) nan desu ka" means "What is \_\_\_ ?"

### Ex.

ジョン :すみません。今日のランチ(は)なんですか。  
きょう

店員 :カレーです。  
てんいん

Jon : Sumimasen. Kyō no ranchi (wa)  
nan desu ka.

John : Excuse me, what's the lunch of the day?  
Waiter : Curry.

Ten-in : Karē desu.

Practice  
A

\_\_\_\_\_、なんですか。  
Use the following words with the phrase " \_\_\_\_\_ , nan desu ka."

今日のランチ  
きょう

kyō no ranchi  
lunch of the day

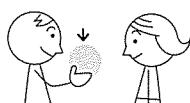
日替わり\*ひがり

higawari  
meal of the day

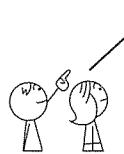
おすすめ

osusume  
recommendation

これ  
kore  
this



あれ  
are  
that



デザート  
dezāto  
dessert



セットのドリンク

setto no dorinku  
included drink



この<白い・黒い・赤い>の

kono <shiroi / kuroi / akai > no  
this <white / black / red> one  
→ See Appendix, Colors

\* **Higawari** ["day change"] originally comes from the practice of restaurants offering a different meal each day. Restaurants now offer special menus each day, such as daily set meals and lunches, which are referred to as **higawari**.

**Practice  
B-1**

Using the menu on page 61, put the words from Practice A into <      > and complete the conversation.

ジョン : <今日のランチ>、なんですか。  
きょう

店員 : <カレー>です。  
てんいん

John : < Kyō no ranchi >, nan desu ka.

Ten'in : < Karē > desu.

John : What's the lunch of the day?

Waiter : Curry and rice.

**Practice  
B-2**

Look at the Pre-text and ask questions about items on the menu using the template below.

ジョン : すみません。これ、なんですか。

店員 : <牛丼>です。  
ぎゅうどん

ジョン : この<赤い>の、なんですか。  
あか

店員 : <しょうが>ですよ。  
てんいん

ジョン : <しょうが> ? <しょうが>って、なんですか。

店員 : <Ginger> です。  
てんいん

Jon : Sumimasen. Kore, nan desu ka.

Ten'in : < Gyūdon > desu.

Jon : Kono < akai > no, nan desu ka.

Ten'in : < Shōga > desu yo.

Jon : < Shōga > ? < Shōga > tte, nan desu ka.

Ten'in : < Ginger > desu.

John : Excuse me. What is this?

Waiter : It's gyu-don.

John : What is this red stuff?

Waiter : That's shoga.

John : Shoga? What is shoga?

Waiter : It's ginger.

**MEMO**

～って、なんですか。／...tte nan desu ka.／What is ...? [Used to ask about the meaning of a word or something you do not understand.]

### Phrase 3

Choose an option and then explain it in a natural-sounding way.

持ち帰りで。  
も かえ

Track  
28

Mochikaeri de.

Take out, please.

**NOTE** Use “**de**” when choosing from a series of options. Saying “**\_\_\_\_\_de onegai shimasu**” is more polite.

**Ex.**

店員 : こちらでお召し上がりですか。  
てんいん め あ

ジョン : いいえ、持ち帰りで。  
も かえ

Ten'in : Kochira de omeshiagari desu ka.

Jon : lie, mochikaeri de.

Staff : Would you like to eat in?

John : No, take out, please.

Practice  
**A**

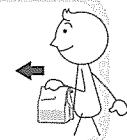
\_\_\_\_\_で。

Use the following words with the phrase “**\_\_\_\_\_ de**”, when asked the question below.

**Q. Would you like to eat in?**

ここ / 店内  
koko / tennai  
here / eat in

持ち帰り  
mochikaeri  
take out



**Q. That comes hot or cold.**

ホット  
hotto  
hot (drink)



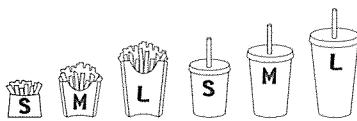
アイス  
aisu  
iced (drink)



**Q. What size would you like?**

エス / エム / エル

esu / emu / eru  
small / medium / large



**Q. Would you like a bag? / Would you like these in separate bags?**

そのまま  
sonomama  
The way it is

一緒 \*  
issho  
together

別々 \*  
betsu betsu  
separate

\* “issho” (together), “betsu betsu” (separate) [also used when determining how many bills are necessary]

Practice  
B-1

Practice ordering with the menu below.

店員 : いらっしゃいませ。こちらでお召し上がりですか。

ジョン : はい、ここで。／いいえ、持ち帰りで。

店員 : ご注文をどうぞ。

ジョン : <チーズバーガー>と<コーラ>、お願ひします。

店員 : <コーラ>のサイズは？

ジョン : <エム>で。

Ten'in : Irasshaimase. Kochira de  
omeshiagari desu ka.

Jon : Hai, koko de. / lie, mochikaeri de.

Ten'in : Go-chūmon o dōzo.

Jon : <チーズバーガー>と<コーラ>,  
onegai shimasu.

Ten'in : <コーラ> no saizu wa?

Jon : <エム> de.

Staff : Welcome. Would you like to eat in?

John : Yes. / No, take out, please.

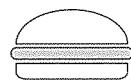
Staff : May I take your order?

John : I'll have a cheeseburger and a cola, please.

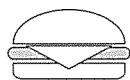
Staff : What size cola would you like?

John : Medium, please.

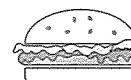
## ~MENU~

**Burger**

Hamburger



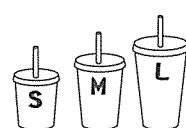
Cheese burger



Teriyaki Burger

**Drink**

Cola  
Iced coffee  
Iced tea

**Side Menu**

French fries



Salad

Practice  
B-2

Make your own conversation using the words in Practice A.

**MEMO**

いらっしゃいませ。／Irasshaimase.／Welcome. /May I help you?

こちらでお召し上がりですか。／Kochira de omeshiagari desu ka.／Would you like to eat in?

ご注文をどうぞ。／Go-chūmon o dōzo.／May I take your order?

## Phrase 4

Politely refuse unnecessary things.

Track  
29

袋、けっこうです。  
ふくろ

Fukuro, kekkō desu.

No bag, thank you.

NOTE

"Kekkō desu." can be used to say "No thank you." and is a polite way to refuse things.

### Ex.

ジョン : 袋(は)けっこうです。  
ふくろ

店員 : かしこまりました。

Jon : Fukuro (wa) kekkō desu.

Ten'in : Kashikomarimashita.

John : No bag, thank you.

Clerk : Okay.

Practice  
A

\_\_\_\_、けっこうです。

Let's use the following words with the phrase "\_\_\_\_, kekkō desu."

袋  
ふくろ

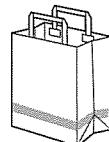
fukuro

bag

紙袋  
かみぶくろ

kami-bukuro

paper bag



ビニール袋  
binīru-bukuro

plastic bag



レシート  
reshīto

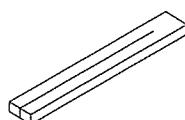
receipt



(お)はし

(o)hashi

chopsticks



スプーン／フォーク

supūn / fōku

spoon / fork

ストロー

sutorō

straw



ミルク

miruku

cream

砂糖  
satō

sugar

ガムシロップ

gamu shiroppu

liquid sugar



Practice  
**B-1**

Put the words from Practice A in <      > and practice the conversation below.

**店員** : <袋>、ご利用ですか。  
てんいん ふくろ りよう

**ジョン** : いいえ、けっこうです。／はい、お願ひします。  
ねが

Ten'in : < Fukuro > go-riyō desu ka.

Jon : lie, kekkō desu. / Hai, onegaishimasu.

Clerk : Would you like a bag?

John : No, thank you. / Yes, please.

Practice  
**B-2**

Look at the picture below and tell the shop staff what you don't need.

**ジョン** : あ、<      >、けっこうです。

**店員** : かしこまりました。  
てんいん

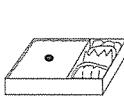
Jon : A, <      > kekkō desu.

Ten'in : Kashikomarimashita.

John : Oh, I don't need a \_\_\_\_\_.

Clerk : Okay.

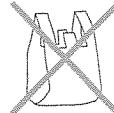
①



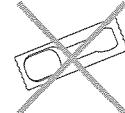
②



③



④



MEMO

~,ご利用ですか。/ ..., go-riyō desu ka. / Would you like to use...? [polite expression]

**Dialogue**

Look at the menu on page 61 and have a practice conversation replacing the words in (1)-(4), then make your own conversation.

**店員** : ご注文、お決まりですか。  
てんいん ちゅうもん き

Ten'in : Go-chūmon, okimari desu ka.

**ジョン** : おすすめはなんですか。

Jon : Osusume wa nan desu ka.

**店員** : (1) 今日のランチです。  
てんいん きょう

Ten'in : (1) Kyō no ranchi desu.

**ジョン** : じゃあ、それ(2)ひとつ、お願いします。  
ねが

Jon : Jā, sore (2) hitotsu, onegaishimasu.

**店員** : お飲み物は?  
てんいん の もの

Ten'in : O-nomimono wa?

**ジョン** : (3) コーラで。

Jon : (3) Kōra de.

**店員** : ご一緒にデザートはいかがですか。  
てんいん いっしょ

Ten'in : Go-issho ni dezāto wa ikaga desu ka.

**ジョン** : けっこうです。

Jon : Kekkō desu.

-During a meal-

~During a meal~

**ジョン** : すみません。(4) お水もらえますか。  
みず

Jon : Sumimasen.(4) O-mizu moraemasu ka.

- ① (1) パスタランチ  
(2) ふたつ  
(3) 生ビール  
(4) おしほり

pasuta ranchi  
futatsu  
nama-biru  
oshibori

- ② (1) 日替わり定食  
(2) みっつ  
(3) アイスコーヒー  
(4) ストロー

higawari-tēshoku  
mittsu  
aisu-kōhī  
sutorō

- ③ Make your own conversation

**MEMO**

ご注文お決まりですか。/ Go-chūmon, o-kimari desu ka / Are you ready to order?

(お)飲み物/(o)nomimono/beverage

ご一緒に～はいかがですか。/ Go-issho ni...wa ikaga desu ka / Would you like ...with that?

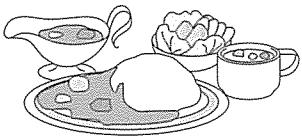
**Material**

Look at the picture below and practice the conversation on the left page.

## ランチメニュー

11:30~14:00

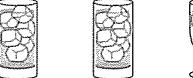
### ランチセット

 <b>① 今日のランチ</b> +ドリンク 750円	 <b>② 日替わり定食</b> +ドリンク 800円
 <b>③ パスタランチ</b> +ドリンク 850円	

### 単品

 <b>④ ラーメン</b> 700円	 <b>⑤ 天丼</b> 800円	 <b>⑥ ステーキ</b> 1200円
---	---	---

### ドリンク

 <b>⑦ コーヒー</b> 紅茶	 <b>⑨ アイスコーヒー</b> <b>⑩ アイスティー</b>	 <b>⑪ コーラ</b> 300円	 <b>⑫ 生ビール</b> <b>⑬ 赤ワイン</b> <b>⑭ 白ワイン</b> 400円
--	--	---	---

### デザート

 <b>⑮ アイスクリーム</b> 200円	 <b>⑯ チーズケーキ</b> 350円	 <b>⑰ ショートケーキ</b> 400円
---	--	--

- ① 今日のランチ / kyō no ranchi / Lunch of the day
- ② 日替わり定食 / higawari-tēshoku / Today's set meal
- ③ パスタランチ / pasuta ranchi / Pasta lunch
- ④ ラーメン / rāmen / Ramen
- ⑤ 天丼 / ten-don / Tendon
- ⑥ ステーキ / sutēki / Steak
- ⑦ コーヒー / kōhī / Coffee
- ⑧ 紅茶 / kōcha / Black tea
- ⑨ アイスコーヒー / aisu-kōhī / Iced coffee
- ⑩ アイスティー / aisu-thī / Iced tea
- ⑪ コーラ / kōra / Cola
- ⑫ 生ビール / nama-biru / Draft beer
- ⑬ 赤ワイン / aka-wain / Red wine
- ⑭ 白ワイン / shiro-wain / White wine
- ⑮ アイスクリーム / aisu-kurimū / Ice cream
- ⑯ チーズケーキ / chīzu-kēki / Cheesecake
- ⑰ ショートケーキ / shōto-kēki / Strawberry shortcake

## Listening

Listen to the conversation between the man and woman and choose the correct answer.

**Q1** At a sushi restaurant

-  1. The waiter does not have any recommendations.
- 2. The customer asked about the lunch of the day.
- 3. The customer asked for a recommendation.

**Q2** At a fast food restaurant

-  1. The customer got cream.
- 2. The customer got liquid sugar.
- 3. The customer got both cream and liquid sugar.

**Q3** A waiter at an izakaya comes to take away an empty glass

-  1. The customer orders another glass of draft beer.
- 2. The customer asks for a glass of water.
- 3. The customer asks for another plate.

**Q4** Checking out at a restaurant

-  1. The customers paid together.
- 2. The customers paid separately.
- 3. The customers received separate receipts.

## Role playing

Role play using the cards below.

1.

**A:** You are a customer at a restaurant. Call the waiter and ask for a menu, then order what you would like to eat.

**B:** You are part of the wait staff at a restaurant. Using the menu on page 61, take A-san's order and ask if he/she would like something to drink.

2.

**A:** You are talking to the cashier at a fast food restaurant. Make a take-out order for one hamburger and one iced coffee.

**B:** You are the cashier at a fast food restaurant. Take A-san's order, ask if he/she would like milk and sugar with the iced coffee, and if you should put the items in separate bags.

## Do you remember?

Use the phrases you have studied in this unit in situations ①–④ below.

①



②



③



④



## Phrases For This Unit

### Unit Phrases

- |                                   |                             |                              |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| ● メニュー、お願いします。<br>ねがいします。         | Menyū, onegaishimasu.       | Could I have a menu?         |
| ● 今日のランチ、なんですか。<br>きょうのランチ、なんですか。 | Kyō no ranchi, nan desu ka. | What's the lunch of the day? |
| ● 持ち帰りで。<br>もちかえりで。               | Mochikaeri de.              | Take out, please.            |
| ● 袋、けっこうです。<br>ふくろ                | Fukuro, kekkō desu.         | No bag, thank you.           |

### Useful expressions

- |                    |                       |  |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--|
| ● ~ってなんですか。        | ...tte nan desu ka.   | What is ...? [Used to ask about the meaning of a word or something you do not understand.] |
| ● ~、ご利用ですか。<br>りよう | ... go-riyō desu ka.  | Will you be using ...? [Polite expression]   |
| ● 以上で。<br>いじょう     | Ijō de.               | That's all.  |
| ● ~はいかがですか。        | ... wa ikaga desu ka. | Would you like ...?  |

Check!



Now I can...

- Make orders at restaurants
- Request and ask about items on the menu
- Communicate with people at convenience stores  
and restaurants

## One More Step

### ● Useful expressions at restaurants

#### 1. Entering a restaurant

(1) 店員 : 何名様ですか。

客 : ひとりです。(ふたり、さんにん、よにん…)

Ten'in : Nan-meい sama desu ka.

Kyaku : Hitori desu. [futari, san-nin, yo-nin ...]

Waiter : How many people?

Customer : One. (Two, three, four, etc.)

(2) 店員 : おたばこは？

客 : ① 吸います。／喫煙席、お願いします。

② 吸いません。／禁煙席、お願いします。

Ten'in : O-tabako wa?

Kyaku : ① Suimasu. / Kitsuen-seki, onegaishimasu.  
② Suimasesu. / Kin'en-seki, onegaishimasu.

Waiter : Do you smoke?

Customer : ① Yes. / Smoking,  
please.

② No. / Non-smoking,  
please.

(3) 店員 : すみません。ただいま満席です。

客 : どのぐらい待ちますか。

店員 : 15分ぐらいです。

Ten'in : Sumimasen, tadaima man-seki desu.

Kyaku : Donogurai machimasu ka.

Ten'in : Jūgo-fun gurai desu.

Waiter : I'm sorry, but we're full right now.

Customer : How long is the wait?

Waiter : About 15 minutes.

#### 2. Asking about food

(1) 客 : これ、肉入ってますか。

店員 : はい、入ってます。／いいえ、入ってません。

Kyaku : Kore, niku haittemasu ka.

Ten'in : Hai, haittemasu. / lie, haittemasen.

Customer : Is there meat in this?

Waiter : Yes, there is. / No, there's not.

(2) 客 : たまねぎ抜きで、お願いします。

Kyaku : Tamanegi nuki de, onegaishimasu.

Customer : Without onions, please.

### 3. Leaving a restaurant

(1) 客 : すみません。お会計、お願ひします。

店員 : お会計はご一緒でよろしいですか。

客 : はい、一緒で。／いいえ、別々で。

Kyaku : Sumimasen. O-kaikei, onegaishimasu.

Ten'in : O-kaikei wa go-issho de yoroshii desu ka.

Kyaku : Hai, issho de. / lie, betsu betsu de.

Customer : Excuse me, could I have the bill, please?

Waiter : Will you pay together?

Customer : Yes, together. / No, separately.

(2) 客 : ごちそうさまでした。おいしかったです。

Kyaku : Gochisōsama deshita. Oishikatta desu.

Customer : Thank you. It was delicious.

## Good to Know

### Japanese fast food - Keywords -

#### ● 食券 shokken

Several restaurants in Japan, like tachi-gui (stand and eat) soba bars and gyūdon (beef rice bowl) counters, use a shokken, or food ticket, system. Upon entering a restaurant, customers purchase a shokken ticket for what they want to eat from an automated vending machine and hand it to a server, who exchanges it for food. After inserting money into a shokken machine, buttons featuring food you can buy for that amount of money light up. After pushing the lit up button for the food you want, be sure to hit the otsuri (change) button to receive your change.

#### ● セルフサービス serufu-sābisu

Several Japanese fast food restaurants are “self-service”, meaning customers are responsible for retrieving their own water, seasonings, and condiments that are placed on most counters and tables. After customers finish eating, they dispose of their own garbage, and if a tray has been used, they return it to the tray collection counter.

#### ● 並 nami・大盛 ōmori / 大 dai・中 chū・小 shō

Sometimes customers must specify the size of the dish they would like when ordering food, especially at gyūdon restaurants. Whereas the words nami (regular) and ōmori (large) are used to describe donburi dishes, restaurants like noodle houses use the terms dai (large), chū (regular), and shō (small). A typical order can be made by saying “Gyūdon, nami de onegaishimasu.” (I’ll have a regular beef rice bowl, please.) or “Udon no dai, onegaishimasu.” (I’ll have a large bowl of udon, please.)



# Can I pay by credit card?

カードでいいですか。

Kādo de ii desu ka.

## Asking permission

許可を得る

### GOALS FOR UNIT 5

- Use simple sentences to ask for permission
- Confirm things to make sure documents are submitted smoothly

## Phrase 1

Use nouns to ask for permission.

Track  
35

カードでいいですか。

Kādo de ii desu ka.

Can I pay by credit card?

**NOTE** “[Noun] de ii desu ka.” is used to ask for permission, and means “Can I do something with/by [noun]?” or “Is [noun] okay?”

### Ex.

ジョン :すみません。カードでいいですか。

店員 :はい、だいじょうぶですよ。

Jon : Sumimasen, kādo de ii desu ka.

Ten'in : Hai, daijōbu desu yo.

John : Excuse me, can I pay by credit card?

Cashier : Yes, that's okay.

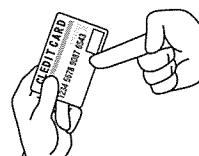
Practice  
**A**

\_\_\_\_\_でいいですか。

Use the following words with the phrase “\_\_\_\_\_ de ii desu ka.”

カード

kādo  
(credit) card



これ

kore  
this

一万円(札)

ichiman-en (satsu)  
ten-thousand yen (note)

英語

Eigo

English

ローマ字

Rōma-jī

Roman letters

今度

kondo

next time

あと

ato

later

予約なし

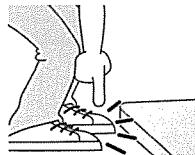
yoyaku nashi

without a reservation

くつ

kutsu

shoes



Practice  
B

Use words from Practice A in <      > to practice having a conversation.

\*Choose words suitable for the situations in ②.

1

ジョン : すみません、<カード>でいいですか。

店員 : ええ、いいですよ。／申し訳ありませんが、ちょっと……。  
もう わけ

Jon : Sumimasen, <kādo> de ii desu ka.

Ten'in : Ee, ii desu yo.  
/ Mōshiwake arimasen ga, chotto..... .

John : Excuse me, can I pay by credit card?

Cashier : Yes, that's fine.

/ I'm terribly sorry, but [we don't accept credit cards].

2

### 1. Checking out at a store

店員 : 980円です。  
てんいん えん

ジョン : すみません、<      >でいいですか。

Ten'in : 980-en desu.

Jon : Sumimasen, <      > de ii desu ka.

Cashier : That comes to 980 yen.

John : Excuse me, could I use a \_\_\_\_\_ ?

### 2. Filling out an application

店員 : こちらにご記入ください。  
てんいん きにゅう

ジョン : <      >でいいですか。

Ten'in : Kochira ni go-kinyū kudasai.

Jon : <      > de ii desu ka.

Clerk : Please fill out [the form] here.

John : Can I use a \_\_\_\_\_ ? / Is \_\_\_\_\_ okay?

### 3. Entering a restaurant

店員 : いらっしゃいませ。  
てんいん

ジョン : すみません、<      >でいいですか。

Ten'in : Irasshaimase.

Jon : Sumimasen, <      > de ii desu ka.

Clerk : Welcome.

John : Excuse me, is \_\_\_\_\_ alright?

#### MEMO

いいですよ。/ i desu yo. / That's fine.

こちらにご記入ください。/ Kochira ni go-kinyū kudasai. / Please fill out (the form) here.

いらっしゃいませ。/ irasshaimase. / Welcome. / May I help you?

## Phrase 2

Use verbs to ask for permission.

Track  
36

このペン、借りてもいいですか。  
か

Kono pen, karite mo ii desu ka. May I borrow this pen?

**NOTE** “[Verb-te] mo ii desu ka.” is also used to ask for permission, and means “May/Can I [verb]?” → See Grammar p.173, Verb te-form

### Ex.

ジョン :すみません。このペン、借りてもいいですか。  
か

受付の人 :どうぞ。  
うけつけ ひと

Jon : Sumimasen. Kono pen,  
karite mo ii desu ka.

Uketsuke no hito : Dōzo.

John : Excuse me. May I borrow this  
pen?

Receptionist : Yes.

Practice  
A

[Verb-te]もいいですか。

Use the following words with the phrase “[Verb-te] mo ii desu ka.”

借りて  
か

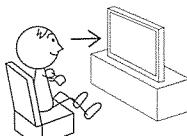
karite

borrow

見て  
み

mite

see/look/watch



使って  
つか

tsukatte

use



入って  
はい

haitte

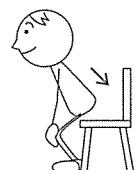
come in



座って  
すわ

suwatte

sit here



もらって  
まわる

moratte

receive/have

たばこを吸って  
す

tabako o sutte

smoke

写真を撮って  
しゃしんと

shashin o totte

take a picture

着て／履いて  
き

kite / haite

put on (upper body)/put on (lower body)

Practice  
B

Put the right word in < > and practice having a conversation. Several words may fit in the blanks.

## 1

- At a temple -

ジョン : すみません。ここ、<          > もいいですか。

係員 : はい、どうぞ。  
かかりいん

ジョン : あと、これ、<          > もいいですか。

係員 : ええ、いいですよ。  
かかりいん

/ すみません。それはちょっと……。

Jon : Sumimasen. Koko, <      > mo ii desu ka.

Kakari-in : Hai, dōzo.

Jon : Ato, kore, <      > mo ii desu ka.

Kakari-in : Ee, ii desu yo.

/ Sumimasen. Sore wa chotto..... .

John : Excuse me, can I \_\_\_\_ here?

Staff : Yes.

John : Also, could I \_\_\_\_ this?

Staff : Yes, that's fine.

/ I'm sorry, but that's not allowed.

## 2

- At the office -

ジョン : このパソコン、<          > もいいですか。

田中 : 今はちょっと……。  
たなか    いま

ジョン : じゃ、あとで<          > もいいですか。

田中 : はい、いいですよ。  
たなか

Jon : Kono pasokon, <      > mo ii desu ka.

Tanaka : Ima wa chotto..... .

Jon : Ja, atode <      > mo ii desu ka.

Tanaka : Hai, ii desu yo.

John : Can I \_\_\_\_ this computer?

Tanaka : Now's not a good time.

John : Okay, then could I \_\_\_\_ it later?

Tanaka : Yes, that's fine.

## MEMO

どうぞ。/ Dōzo. / Please / Feel free.

あと、～ / Ato, ... / Also, ...

それはちょっと……。/ Sore wa chotto..... / I'm sorry but that's not allowed.

今はちょっと……。/ Ima wa chotto..... / Now's not a good time.

**Dialogue**

Do tasks on the right page using the following conversation template and changing words (1) - (5).

ジョン : すみません、

(1) 会員になりたいんですが……。

店員 : 本日、身分証明書は  
お持ちですか。

ジョン : (2) 在留カードでいいですか。

店員 : はい、けっこうです。

それから、(3) 写真はお持ちですか。

ジョン : えっと、(4) 今度でいいですか。

店員 : はい、だいじょうぶです。

では、こちらにご記入ください。

ジョン : (5) このペン、借りてもいいですか。

店員 : ええ、いいですよ。

Jon : Sumimasen,

(1) Kai-in ni naritai n desu ga..... .

Ten'in : Honjitsu, mibun shōmei sho wa  
o-mochi desu ka.

Jon : (2) Zairyū kādo de ii desu ka.

Ten'in : Hai, kekkō desu.

Sorekara, (3) shashin wa o-mochi desu ka.

Jon : Etto, (4) kondo de ii desu ka.

Ten'in : Hai, daijōbu desu.

Dewa, kochira ni go-kinyū kudasai.

Jon : (5) Kono pen, karite mo ii desu ka.

Ten'in : Ee, ii desu yo.

① (1) 口座を開きたい

(2) パスポート

(3) 印鑑

(4) サイン

(5) 英語で

kōza o hirakitai

pasupōto

inkan

sain

Eigo de

② (1) プールを利用したい

(2) 学生証

(3) 水着とぼうし

(4) これ

(5) ここに座って

pūru o riyō shitai (riyō = use)

gakusei-shō

mizugi to bōshi (= swimsuit and cap)

kore

koko ni suwatte

**MEMO**

～はお持ちですか。／... wa o-mochi desu ka.／Do you have ... ? [polite expression]

それから／sorekara／also, and

けっこうです。／Kekkō desu.／That's alright. → See p.118 "Kekkō desu."

## Material

Check the words and situations of the three tasks below, then practice having a conversation using the left page.

### Ex. Registering with a gym or rental store



会員になりたいんですが……。

Kai-in ni naritai n desu ga……／I'd like to become a member.

入会申し込み書	
• 住 所	
• 名 前	
TEL	

### ① Opening a bank account



口座を開きたいんですが……。

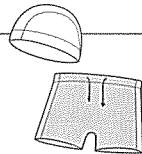
Kōza o hirikitai n desu ga……／I'd like to open a bank account.

### ② Using a pool, gym, or other public facility



プールを利用したいんですが……。

Pūru o riyō shitai n desu ga……／I'd like to use the swimming pool.



### You are often asked for:

#### 1) 身分証明書 / mibun shōmei sho / ID

● 在留カード / zairyū kādō  
residence card

● パスポート / pasupōto / passport

● 運転免許証 / unten menkyō shō / driver license

● 学生証 / gakusei shō / student ID

● 健康保険証 / kenkō hokenshō /  
health insurance card



#### 2) 住所がわかるもの / jūsho ga wakaru mono / Proof of address

● 公共料金の請求書 /  
kōkyō-ryōkin no seikyū sho / Utility bills

#### 3) その他 / sonota / Others

● 写真 / shashin / photo

● 印鑑 / inkan / signature seal



## Listening

Listen to the conversation between the man and woman and choose the correct answer.

**Q1** At a restaurant

-  1. The customer is not allowed to smoke because it is non-smoking area.  
2. The customer wants to buy cigarettes.  
3. The customer is not allowed to smoke because the waitress does not like cigarettes.

**Q2** At a drugstore

-  1. The man receives only a pamphlet.  
2. The man can take either a pamphlet or a free sample.  
3. The man receives both a pamphlet and a free sample.

**Q3** At a front desk

-  1. The woman said you cannot write in Roman letters.  
2. The woman said you can write in Roman letters.  
3. The woman would not let the man fill out an application.

**Q4** In a taxi

-  1. The passenger paid with a 1,000-yen note.  
2. The passenger paid with a 10,000-yen note.  
3. The passenger paid with a credit card.

## Role playing

Role play using the cards below.

1.

**A:** You go to a restaurant with good reviews, but it seems crowded. Ask if you can get a table without a reservation. If you are refused, take a business card or pamphlet placed near the cash register so you can make a reservation for another time.

**B:** You work at a restaurant. Right now there are no empty tables, so no one without a reservations may enter. Deny entry to anyone who does not have a reservation.

2.

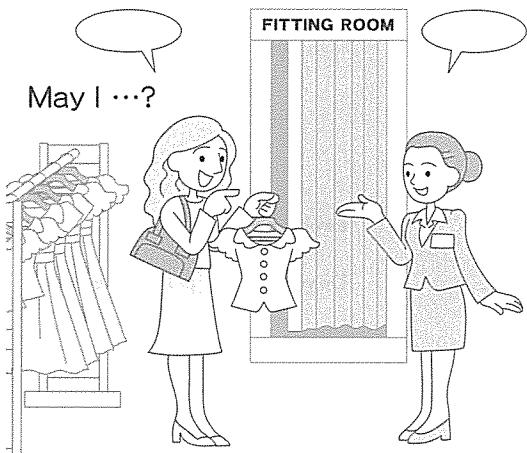
**A:** You want to become a member at a gym. Tell this to the person behind the counter. Explain that you have no time to fill out forms today, and ask if you can take them home to fill out, bring back later, and if you may fill them out in English.

**B:** You work at a gym. A-san wants to become a member, so ask him/her to fill out the necessary paperwork. It is fine for A-san to take the forms home and bring them back later, and it is also okay if the forms are filled out in English.

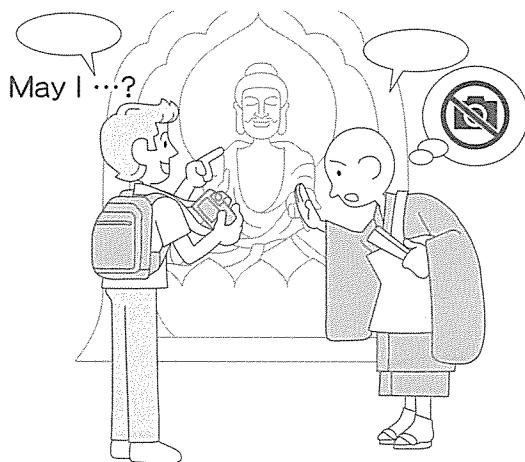
## Do you remember?

Use the phrases you have studied in this unit in situations ①–④ below.

1



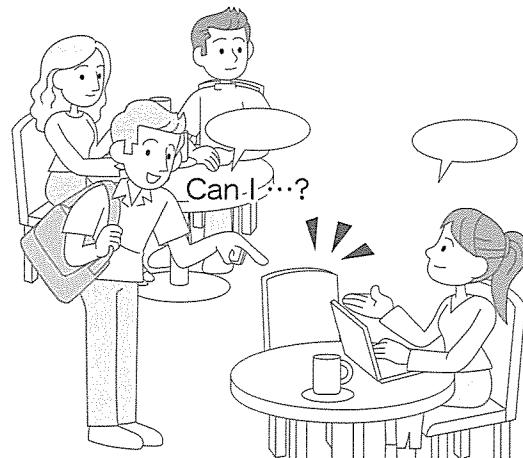
2



3



4



## Phrases for This Unit

### Unit Phrases

- カードでいいですか。 Kādo de ii desu ka. Can I pay by credit card?
- このペン、<sup>か</sup>借りてもいいですか。 Kono pen, karite mo ii desu ka. May I borrow this pen?

### Useful expressions

- ~たいんですが……。 ... tai n desu ga..... I would like to.... / I want to....
- ~お持ちですか。 ...o-mochi desu ka. Do you have ...? [polite expression]

Check!



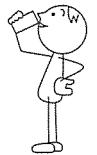
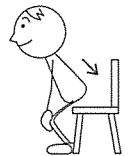
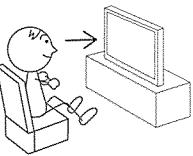
Now I can...

Use simple sentences to ask for permission

Confirm things to make sure documents are submitted smoothly

## Remember and Use!

### ● 8 Basic Verbs ●

<p>to eat たべる / taberu (→ たべて / tabete)</p> 	<p>to drink のむ / nomu (→ のんで / nonde)</p> 
<p>to sit すわる / suwaru (→ すわって / suwatte)</p> 	<p>to enter はいる / hairu (→ はいって / haitte)</p> 
<p>to write かく / kaku (→ かいて / kaite)</p> 	<p>to use つかう / tsukau (→ つかって / tsukatte)</p> 
<p>to see, look, watch みる / miru (→ みて / mite)</p> 	<p>to copy コピーする / kopī suru (→ コピーして / kopī shite)</p> 

Learn the eight basic verbs above and use them with the phrase “[verb-te] mo ii desu ka.”

～(て)もいいですか。／ [Verb-te] mo ii desu ka. ／ May/can I ...?

→ See p.78 for more verbs.

### Japanese Verbs (dictionary form, masu-form and te-form)

Although Japanese verbs assume a variety of conjugations depending on tense and their function within a sentence, the three most basic verb forms are the **dictionary form**, **masu-form**, and **te-form**.

The **dictionary form**, also known as the **plain form**, frequently appears in casual conversation and is also used in different grammatical expressions. The **masu-form** appears in more polite conversation.

The **te-form**, which appears in Units 5 and 6, does not express tense, but can be conveniently used to create a wide array of grammatical expressions.

Verbs are divided into one of three groups depending on how they conjugate: **ru-verbs**, which have a simplistic conjugation, or **u-verbs**, which are the largest in number and the two **irregular verbs**.

See p.171, Grammar for more detailed explanations on verb conjugations and other issues.

## ● Verb Conjugation List ●

Ru-verbs	Dictionary form		Masu-form		Te-form	
eat	たべる	taberu	たべます	tabemasu	たべて	tabete
see, look	みる	miru	みます	mimasu	みて	mite
open	あける	akeru	あけます	akemasu	あけて	akete
put on (upper body)	きる	kiru	きます	kimasu	きて	kite

U-verbs	Dictionary form		Masu-form		Te-form	
use	つかう	tsukau	つかいます	tsukaimasu	つかって	tsukatte
meet	あう	au	あいます	aimasu	あって	atte
buy	かう	kau	かいます	kaimasu	かって	katte
enter	はいる	hairu	はいります	hairimasu	はいって	haitte
sit	すわる	suwaru	すわります	suwarimasu	すわって	suwatte
go home	かえる	kaeru	かえります	kaerimasu	かえって	kaette
drink	のむ	nomu	のみます	nomimasu	のんで	nonde
read	よむ	yomu	よみます	yomimasu	よんで	yonde
play, have fun	あそぶ	asobu	あそびます	asobimasu	あそんで	asonde
write	かく	kaku	かきます	kakimasu	かいて	kaite
put on (lower body)	はく	haku	はきます	hakimasu	はいて	haite

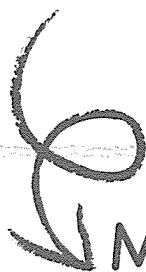
Irregular verbs	Dictionary form		Masu-form		Te-form	
do	する	suru	します	shimasu	して	shite
copy	コピーする	kopi suru	コピーします	kopi shimasu	コピーして	kopi shite
work	しごとする	shigoto suru	しごとします	shigoto shimasu	しごとして	shigoto shite
shop	かいものする	kaimono suru	かいものします	kaimono shimasu	かいものして	kaimono shite
come	くる	kuru	きます	kimasu	きて	kite



# Please wait a moment.

ちょっと待ってください。

Chotto matte kudasai.



## Making requests

依頼する

### GOALS FOR UNIT 6

- Use simple sentences to make requests
- Invite someone to have something
- Give simple directions to a destination in a taxi

## Phrase 1

Making simple requests.

Track  
42

ちょっと待ってください。  
ま

Chotto matte kudasai.

Please wait a moment.

**NOTE**

"[Verb-te] kudasai" is used to ask someone to please do something, and can be used to make a request or invite someone to do something.

### Ex.

① ちょっと待ってください。  
ま

② どうぞ食べてください。  
た

① Chotto matte kudasai.

② Dōzo tabete kudasai.

① Please wait a moment.

② Please help yourself.

Practice  
A-1

[Verb-te]ください。

Make requests using the following words with the phrase "[Verb-te] kudasai."

ちょっと待って  
ま  
chotto matte  
wait a moment

ちょっと来て  
き  
chotto kite  
come [here for a second]

それを見せて  
み  
sore o misete  
show me that

手伝って  
つだ  
tetsudatte  
help

Practice  
A-2

どうぞ[Verb-te]ください。

Invite someone to do something using the phrase "Dōzo [Verb-te] kudasai."

食べて  
た  
tabete  
eat



飲んで  
の  
nonde  
drink

座って  
すわ  
suwatte  
sit

入って  
はい  
haitte  
enter



使って  
つか  
tsukatte  
use



見て  
み  
mite  
see, look, watch

Practice  
B-1

What you can say with the phrase “[Verb-te] kudasai.” in the following situations?  
There may be more than one correct answer.

1. You are at a restaurant. You are not ready to order but the waiter has already come to your table.
2. The photocopy machine that you are using at a convenience store has a paper jam. Call one of the store clerks over.
3. You see a watch in a display case that you would like to take a closer look at. Ask the store clerk for help.

Practice  
B-2

Put the words from Practice A-2 in <      > and practice the conversation below.

①

田中 : ジョンさん、これ<食べて>もいいですか。  
たなか

ジョン : はい、どうぞ<食べて>ください。

Tanaka : Jon-san, kore <tabete> mo ii desu ka.  
Jon : Hai, dōzo <tabete> kudasai.

Tanaka : John-san, can I eat this?  
John : Yes, please do.

②

ジョン : 田中さん、ここ<座って>もいいですか。  
たなか

田中 : ええ、どうぞ<座って>ください。

Jon : Tanaka-san, koko <suwatte> mo ii desu ka.  
Tanaka : Ee, dōzo <suwatte> kudasai.

John : Tanaka-san, can I sit here?  
Tanaka : Yes, by all means.

## MEMO

～てもいいですか。/[verb-te] mo ii desu ka. / Can I / May I ...? → See p.70, Unit 5

Practice  
**A-3**

[Verb-te]ください。

Use the following words with the phrase “[Verb-te] kudasai.”

- In a taxi -

角を左に曲がって

kado o hidari ni magatte

turn left at the corner

信号を右に曲がって

shingō o migi ni magatte

turn right at the traffic light

(もうちょっと)

まっすぐ行って

(mochotto) massugu itte  
go straight (a little further)

そこで止めて

soko de tomete

stop there

(明治)通りを行って

(Meiji)-dōri o itte

go down Meiji street

その道をわたって

sono michi o watatte

cross the street

Practice  
**B-3**

Give directions to the taxi driver for where you want to go using the map on the right page.

Take a taxi to places (1) – (3) on the right page. Think about the example sentences and first ask the driver to take you to a nearby landmark. Once you arrive at the landmark, give directions to your final destination.

**運転手** : どちらまでですか。

**ジョン** : <ニューホテル>の近くまでお願いします。

**運転手** : かしこまりました。

– Near your destination –

**運転手** : このへんですか。

**ジョン** : <もうちょっとまっすぐ行って>ください。  
あ、その<ゲストハウス>です。

そこで止めてください。

Untenshu : Dochira made desu ka.

Jon : <Nyū hoteru> no chikaku made onegaishimasu.

Untenshu : Kashikomarimashita.

– Near your destination –

Untenshu : Kono hen desu ka.

Jon : <Mō chotto massugu itte> kudasai.

A, sono <gesuto-hausu> desu.

Soko de tomete kudasai.

Taxi driver : Where to?

John : Take me to around the New Hotel, please.

Taxi driver : Right away.

- Near your destination -

Taxi driver : Is this the area?

John : Please <go straight a little>. Ah, that <guest house> is. Please stop there.

## Map

Look at the map below and practice the conversation on the left page.

Ex. Destination: Gesuto-hausu / Guesthouse

Landmark: Nyū hoteru / The New Hotel

(1) Destination: (ILS) biru / The ILS Building

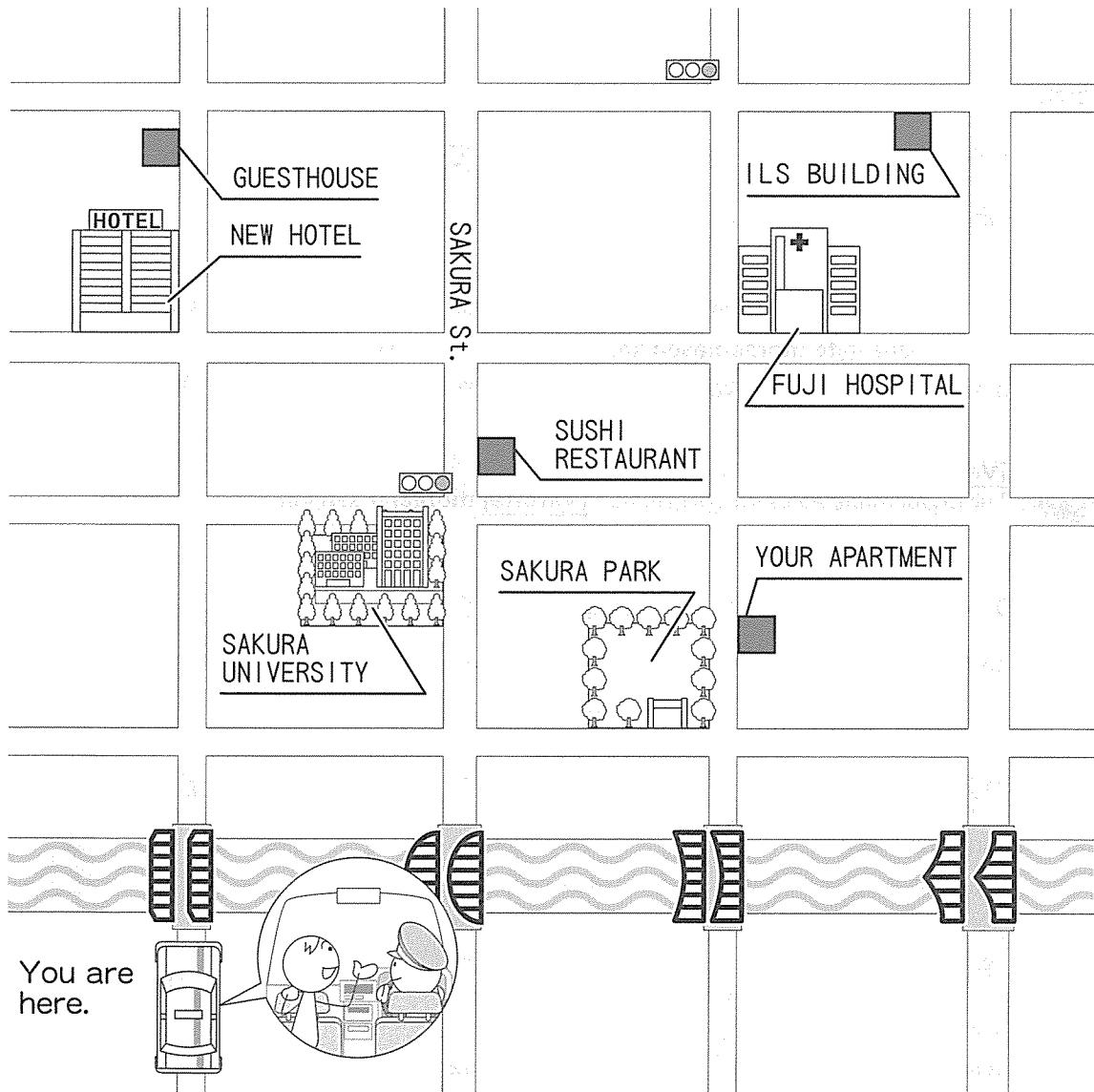
Landmark: Fuji byōin / Fuji Hospital

(2) Destination: Apāto / Your apartment

Landmark: Sakura kōen / Sakura Park

(3) Destination: Sushi-ya / A sushi restaurant

Landmark: Sakura daigaku / Sakura University



## Phrase 2

Use negative questions to make requests more polite.

Track  
43

ゆっくり話してもらえませんか。  
はな

**Yukkuri hanashite moraemasen ka.** Could you speak more slowly?

**NOTE** “[Verb-te] moraemasen ka” is a polite way to make a request. (= “Could I have you...?”) It uses the negative form of “moraemasu,” which means “to be able to receive.”

### Ex.

ジョン :すみません。もうちょっとゆっくり話してもらえませんか。  
はな

男の人 :あ、すみません。わかりました。

Jon : Sumimasen. Mōchotto yukkuri  
hanashite **moraemasen ka.**

Otoko no hito : A, sumimasen. Wakarimashita.

John : I'm sorry, could you speak a little more  
slowly?

Man : Ah, I'm sorry about that. Yes.

Practice  
A

[Verb-te] もらえませんか。

Use the following words with the phrase “[Verb-te] moraemasen ka.”

ゆっくり話して  
はな  
yukkuri hanashite  
speak slowly

写真を撮って  
しゃしんと  
shashin o totte  
take a picture

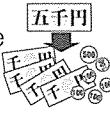
手伝って  
てつだ  
tetsudatte  
help me



この漢字を読んで  
かんじよ  
kono kanji o yonde  
read this Kanji

地図を描いて  
ちずか  
chizu o kaite  
draw a map

お金をくずして  
かね  
okane o kuzushite  
break a note



それを取って  
と  
sore o totte  
pass that to me



これを貸して  
か  
kore o kashite  
lend me this/let me use

荷物を預かって  
にもつあず  
nimotsu o azukatte  
handle bags

Practices  
B

Ask for help from someone around you in the following situations.

1. You want to use a coin locker, but you don't have any coins.
2. You have a map with only Japanese written on it, and can't read the kanji for some of the place names, but want to know what they say.
3. After you check out of a hotel, you want to go to a few tourist attractions. Ask the hotel staff if they will look after your bags.
4. You are at a temple by yourself and want someone to take your picture.
5. You are at a convenience store and need to use the restroom.

## Column

There are different levels of politeness when making requests in Japanese. After the most simplistic phrase, [verb-te] + **kudasai**, there are the affirmative and negative forms of **moraeru**, [verb-te] **moraemasu/moraemasen ka**, which are used in questions. These are followed by **itadakeru**, the *keigo*-form of **moraeru**, in expressions like [verb-te] **itadakemasu/itadakemasen ka**, which frequently appear in conversation. The politeness of a request can be modified simply by changing the words that come after the **te-form** of a verb. Use different request words depending on the situation and difficulty of a request.

**Verb te-form +**

itadakemasen ka  
itadakemasu ka  
moraemasen ka  
moraemasu ka  
kudasai

Expressions with increasing politeness

**Dialogue**

Practice having a conversation by replacing the words in (1) – (3) with the words below.

- Tanaka-san is late to a party at an izakaya-

**ジョン** : あ、田中さん。  
たなか

どうぞ (1) 座すわってください。

**田中** : ありがとうございます。  
たなか

**ジョン** : どうぞ (2) 飲のんでください

**田中** : あ、どうも。  
たなか

**ジョン** : おはし、取りましょうか。  
と

**田中** : あります。だいじょうぶです。  
たなか

- Later -

**ジョン** : すみません、田中さん。  
たなか  
(3) 塩しお、取ってもらえませんか。

**田中** : はい、どうぞ。  
たなか

Jon : A, Tanaka-san.

Dōzo (1) suwatte kudasai.

Tanaka : Arigatō gozaimasu.

Jon : Dōzo (2) onde kudasai.

Tanaka : A, dōmo.

Jon : O-hashi, torimashōka.

Tanaka : Arimasu. Daijōbu desu.

- ① (1) 入はいって  
(2) 食たべて  
(3) しょうゆ

haitte

tabete

shōyu

- ② (1) こっちに来て  
(2) この(お)皿さら、使つかって  
(3) さしみ

kocchi ni kite

kono (o)sara, tsukatte

sashimi

**MEMO**

どうも。/Dōmo./Thanks.

(お)はし、取りましょうか。/(O)hashi, torimashō ka./Should I get you chopsticks?

塩しお/shio/salt

しょうゆ/shōyu/soy sauce

## Listening

Listen to the conversation between the man and woman and choose the correct answer.

**Q1** At the front desk of a hotel

1. The woman borrows an umbrella.
2. The woman lends an umbrella.
3. The woman buys an umbrella.

**Q2** At an izakaya

1. The customer has already ordered some food.
2. The customer is not ready to leave the restaurant.
3. The customer is not ready to order.

## Role playing

Role play using the cards below.

1.

**A:** A Japanese friend has stopped by your house. After inviting your friend to come inside and sit down, offer him/her a cup of tea.

**Q3** In a taxi

1. The passenger asked the driver to turn left at a traffic light.
2. The passenger asked the driver to turn right.
3. The passenger asked the driver to go straight.

**Q4** At a friend's house party

1. The man wants food.
2. The man wants an empty glass.
3. The man wants a clean plate.

2.

**A:** You are at an information center. Ask a staff member to show you a bus time table (=jikoku-hyō), and also ask them to make a copy of any pages you need.

**B:** You have come to A-san's house to give him/her a box of chocolate. Present the chocolate and suggest A-san eat it. If A-san offers you something, say thank you and accept it.

**B:** You work at an information center. Provide assistance with A-san's requests.

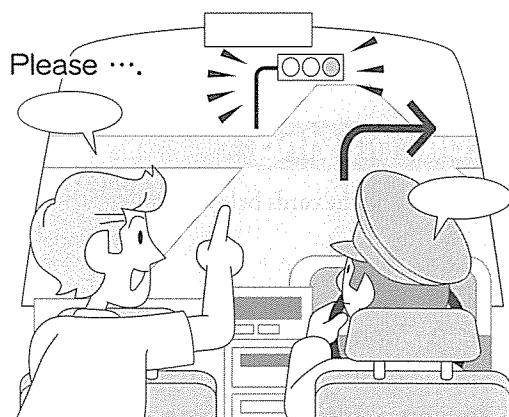
## Do you remember?

Use the phrases you have studied in this unit in situations ①–③ below.

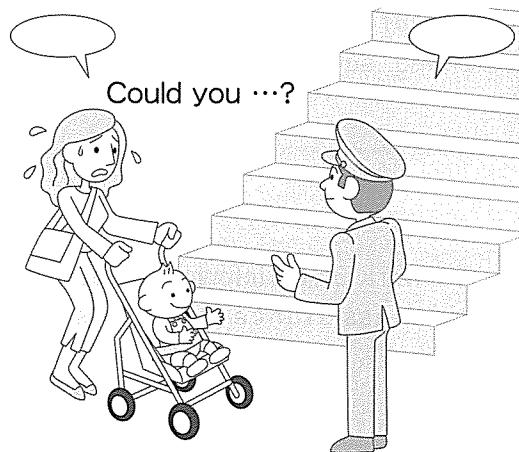
①



②



③



## Phrases for This Unit

### Unit Phrases

- ちょっと待ってください。  
Chotto matte kudasai. Please wait a moment.
- ゆっくり話して  
もらえませんか。  
Yukkuri hanashite moraemasen ka. Could you speak more slowly?

### Useful expressions

- どうぞ、食べてください。  
Dōzo tabete kudasai. Please help yourself.
- どうも。  
Dōmo. Thanks.
- ~までお願いします。  
... made onegaishimasu. Please take me to ....  
[used when giving directions to a taxi driver]

Check!



Now I can...

- Use simple sentences to make a request
- Invite someone to have something
- Give simple directions to a destination in a taxi

## Good to Know

### Customer Service

When buying a present for someone at a Japanese shop, several stores will provide free giftwrapping upon request. However, boxes and special wrapping may come at a fee, so be sure to confirm this beforehand.

Stores will also give multiple bags for multiple items at the customer's request. Department stores, large grocery stores, and stores that sell furniture and electronics typically provide home delivery. The cost of delivery depends on the distance traveled, with nearby places sometimes being free, so be sure to confirm before making any arrangements.

#### ● Helpful Phrases

##### 1. Requesting giftwrapping

(1) すみません、ラッピングしてもらえますか。

Sumimasen, rappingu shite moraemasu ka.

Excuse me, would you giftwrap this for me?

(2) 無料\*ですか。有料\*ですか。

Muryō\* desu ka. Yūryō\* desu ka.

Is wrapping here free or does it cost something?

\*muryō= free / yūryō= paid

##### 2. Arranging delivery

(1) すみません、これ、配達してもらえませんか。

Sumimasen, kore, haitatsu shite moraemasen ka.

Excuse me, could I have this delivered?

(2) ~まで、いくらかかりますか。

... made ikura kakarimasu ka.

How much does it cost [to have it delivered] to ... ?

#### What you must provide

住所／jūsho／address  
じゅうしょ

名前／namae／name  
なまえ

電話番号／denwa bangō／phone number  
でんわばんごう

配達日時／haitatsu-nichiji／delivery date and time  
はいたつにちじ



# Does this (train) go to Yokohama?

これ、横浜に行きますか。  
よこはま

Kore, Yokohama ni ikimasu ka.

## Transportation

交通

### GOALS FOR UNIT 7

- Confirm how to get to a place with public transportation
- Ask for the best route somewhere with public transportation
- Ask about the time and cost required to reach a destination

## Phrase 1

Ask if a train goes where you want to go.



これ、横浜に行きますか。  
よこはま

Kore, Yokohama ni ikimasu ka.

Does this (train) go to Yokohama?

**NOTE**

"Ikimasu" means "to go." The phrase "Kore, [place] ni ikimasu ka?" is used to ask if a nearby mode of transportation goes to a specific destination.

### Ex.

ジョン : すみません。これ、横浜に行きますか。  
よこはま

駅員 : ええ、行きますよ。  
えきいん

Jon : Sumimasen. Kore, Yokohama ni ikimasu ka.  
Eki-in : Ee, ikimasuyo.

John : Excuse me. Does this (train)  
go to Yokohama?  
Station staff : Yes, it does.

**Practice**  
**A-1**

これ、\_\_\_\_\_に行きますか。

Use the following words with the phrase "Kore, \_\_\_\_\_ ni ikimasu ka."

横浜  
よこはま

Yokohama

東京  
とうきょう

Tōkyō

新大阪  
しんおおさか

Shin-Ōsaka

成田空港  
なりたくうこう

Narita kūkō

Yokohama

Tōkyō

Shin-Osaka

Narita Airport

Practice  
A-2

[Place]は、\_\_\_\_\_ですよ。

Answer the questions from Practice A-1 using the phrase “[Place] wa \_\_\_\_\_ desu yo.”

2番線  
にばんせん  
ni-ban sen  
Platform 2

ちがうホーム  
chigau hōmu  
a different platform

ちがう線  
せん  
chigau sen  
a different train line

次の電車  
つぎでんしゃ  
tsugi no densha  
the next train

あっち  
acchi  
over there

反対  
はんたい  
hantai  
the opposite side

Practice  
B

Put the words from Practice A-1 or A-2 in <      > and practice the conversation below.

- A train is stopped at the platform -

ジョン :すみません、これ、<sup>A-1</sup>〈横浜〉に行きますか。

駅員 :はい、行きますよ。／いいえ、<sup>A-1</sup>〈横浜〉は<sup>A-2</sup>〈2番線〉ですよ。

ジョン :ありがとうございます。

Jon : Sumimasen, kore, <sup>A-1</sup><Yokohama> ni ikimasu ka.

Eki-in : Hai, ikimasu yo.  
/ lie, <sup>A-1</sup><Yokohama> wa <sup>A-2</sup>< ni-ban sen >  
desu yo.

Jon : Arigatō gozaimasu.

John : Excuse me, does this (train) go to Yokohama?

Station staff : Yes, it does.  
/ No, the train for Yokohama stops at Platform 2.

John : Thank you.

## Phrase 2

Confirm how to get to a destination.

Track  
50

新宿までどうやって行けばいいですか。  
しんじゅく

Shinjuku made dōyatte ieba ii desu ka.

How do I get to Shinjuku?

**NOTE**

"Made" and "dōyatte" mean "to" and "how", respectively. The phrase "Dōyatte ieba ii desu ka." is used when asking directions to a destination.

### Ex.

ジョン : 新宿までどうやって行けばいいですか。  
しんじゅく

駅員 : 総武線で一本ですよ。  
えきいん そうぶせん いっぽん

Jon : Shinjuku made dōyatte ieba ii desu ka.

Eki-in : Sōbu-sen de ippon desu yo.

John : How do I get to Shinjuku?

Station staff : You can go straight there with the Sobu-Line.

Practice  
**A**

\_\_\_\_\_までどうやって行けばいいですか。

Use the following words with the phrase "\_\_\_\_\_made dōyatte ieba ii desu ka."

新宿  
しんじゅく

Shinjuku

Shinjuku

渋谷  
しぶや

Shibuya

Shibuya

東京  
とうきょう

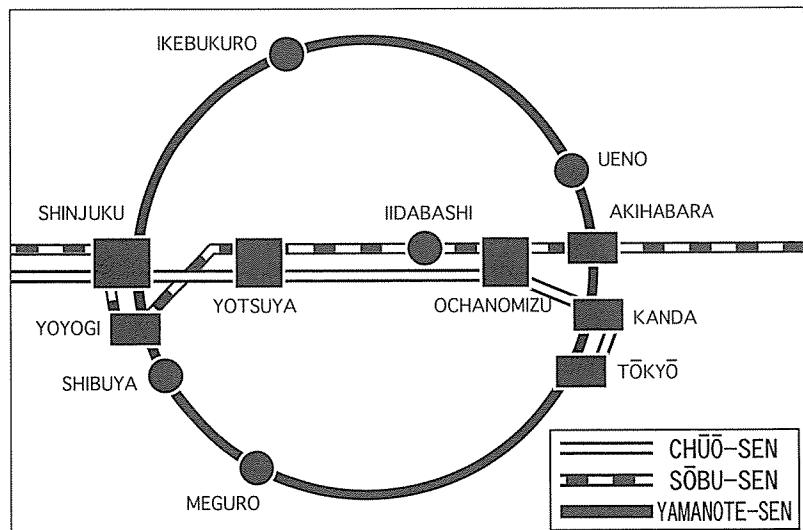
Tōkyō

Tokyo

秋葉原  
あきはばら

Akihabara

Akihabara



Practice  
**B**

Ask how to get to the places listed in Practice A using the map on page 94 and following the pattern in (1) or (2) below.

- Currently at Yoyogi -

ジョン : すみません。<sup>A-1</sup>〈東京〉まで、どうやって行けばいいですか。  
とうきょう

駅員 <sup>えきいん</sup> : (1) 〈山手線〉で一本ですよ。  
やまの てせん いつほん

(2) 〈総武線〉に乗って、〈四谷〉で〈中央線〉に乗りかえですよ。  
そうぶせん の ょつや ちゅうおうせん

ジョン : ありがとうございます。

Jon : Sumimasen. <sup>A-1</sup>< Tōkyō > made  
dōyatte ikeba ii desu ka.

Eki-in : (1) < Yamanote-sen > de ippon desu yo.  
(2) < Sōbu-sen > ni notte,  
< Yotsuya > de < Chūō-sen > ni  
norikae desu yo.

Jon : Arigatō gozaimasu.

John : Excuse me. How do I get to Tokyo?

Station staff : (1) You can go straight there with the  
Yamanote-Line.

(2) You can take the Sobu-Line and  
transfer to the Chuo-Line at Yotsuya.

John : Thank you.

**MEMO**

(~線で)一本 / (...sen de) ippon / directly on the ... line

(~線)に乗って / (...sen) ni notte / get on the ... line [the te-form is used in conjunction with other verbs]

(Aで)B線に乗りかえです。 / (A de) B-sen ni norikae desu. / Transfer to B-line (at A).

## Phrase 3

Ask how much time it takes to get somewhere.

東京から京都までどのぐらいかかりますか。  
とうきょう きょうと

Track  
51

Tōkyō kara Kyōto made donogurai kakarimasu ka.

How long does it take from Tokyo to Kyoto?

NOTE

"A kara B made" means "from A to B", the word "donogurai" means "how long?" and "kakarimasu" means "take" when referring to time. The phrase "Donogurai kakarimasu ka." is used when asking how much time it takes to get somewhere.

### Ex.

ジョン : 東京から京都までどのぐらいかかりますか。  
とうきょう きょうと

田中 : 新幹線で2時間半ぐらいですよ。  
たなか しんかんせん じかんはん

Jon : Tōkyō kara Kyōto made donogurai kakarimasu ka.

Tanaka : Shinkansen de 2-jikan-han gurai desu yo.

John : How long does it take from Tokyo to Kyoto?

Tanaka : It's about two and a half hours by Shinkansen.

Practice

A \_\_\_\_\_までどのぐらいかかりますか。  
Use the following words with the phrase "\_\_\_\_\_ made donogurai kakarimasu ka."

①

築地  
つきじ

Tsukiji

Tsukiji

②

東京スカイツリー  
とうきょう

Tōkyō sukaitsuri

TOKYO SKYTREE

③

箱根  
はこね

Hakone

Hakone

④

日光  
にっこう

Nikkō

Nikko

## Practice

**B** Look up how to say lengths of time (p. 103) and answer the questions in Practice A using the information below.

① 地下鉄 ちかてつ chikatetsu	15分 ふん 15-fun 15 minutes	② 歩いて* ある aruite* on foot	20分 ふん 20-pun 20 minutes
③ 電車 でんしゃ densha	1時間半 じかんはん 1-jikan han 1.5 hours	④ 車 くるま kuruma	2時間半 じかんはん 2-jikan han 2.5 hours

\* When describing how long it takes to walk somewhere, the verb "aruite" is used without particles (compare "densha de" with "aruite".)

ジョン : ここから〈築地〉までどのぐらいかかりますか。

田中 : 〈地下鉄〉で、たぶん〈15分〉ぐらいです。

ジョン : そうですか。

Jon : Koko kara < Tsukiji > made  
donogurai kakarimasu ka.

Tanaka : < Chikatetsu > de tabun < 15-fun >  
gurai desu.

Jon : Sō desu ka.

John : How long does it take to get from here to  
Tsukiji?

Tanaka : On the subway, probably about 15 minutes.

John : Okay.

MEMO

～ぐらいです。／… gurai desu.／It's about ... .

たぶん／tabun／probably/I think

**Dialogue**

Look at the table on the right page and practice the conversation pattern below.

**ジョン** : 鈴木さん、東京から(1)京都まで  
 すずきとうきょうから(1)きょうとまで  
 どうやって行けばいいですか。  
 い

Jon : Suzuki-san, Tōkyō kara (1) Kyōto  
 made dōyatte ikeba ii desu ka.

**鈴木** : うーん、(2)バスか(3)新幹線ですね。  
 すずき(2)バスか(3)しんかんせん

Suzuki : Uh, (2) basu ka (3) shinkansen desu ne.

**ジョン** : (2)バスでどのぐらいかかりますか。

Jon : (2) Basu de donogurai kakarimasu ka.

**鈴木** : たぶん(4)6時間ぐらいです。  
 すずきたぶん(4)6じかんぐらいです。

Suzuki : Tabun (4) 6-jikan gurai desu.

**ジョン** : いくらぐらいかかりますか。

Jon : Ikura gurai kakarimasu ka.

**鈴木** : そうですね……。

Suzuki : Sō desu ne..... .

(5)7000円ぐらいだと思いますよ。  
 えんおも

(5) 7000-en gurai da to omoimasu yo.

**ジョン** : そうですか。ありがとうございます。

Jon : Sō desu ka. Arigatō gozaimasu.

- ① (1) 富士山  
 ふじさん  
 (2) バス  
 basu  
 (3) 車  
 kuruma  
 (4) 2時間半  
 じかんはん  
 (5) 1500円  
 えん

Fuji-san  
 basu  
 kuruma  
 2-jikan-han  
 1500-en

- ② (1) 沖縄  
 おきなわ  
 (2) 船  
 fune  
 (3) 飛行機  
 hikōki  
 (4) 3日間  
 mikka-kan  
 (5) 20000円  
 えん

Okinawa  
 fune  
 hikōki  
 mikka-kan  
 20000-en

**MEMO**

いくらぐらいかかりますか。／Ikura gurai kakarimasu ka.／About how much does it cost?

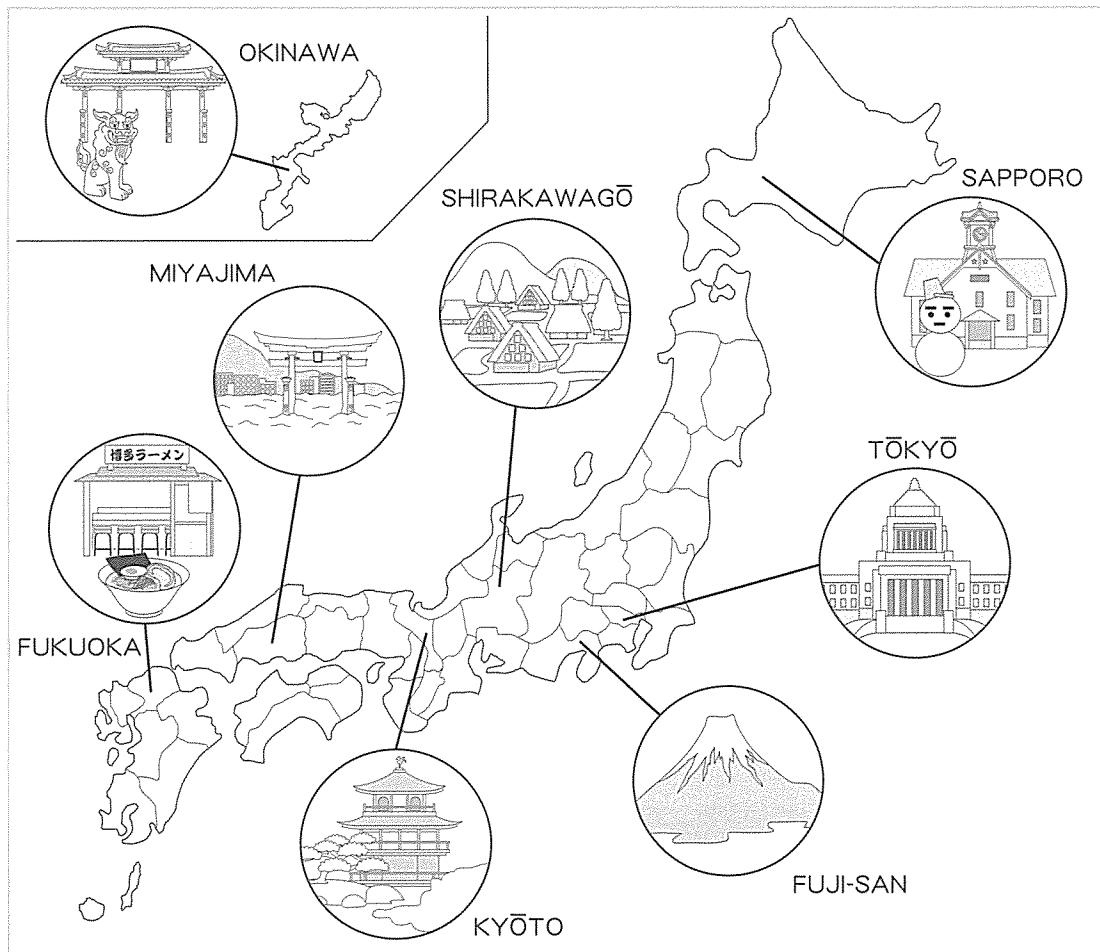
～(だ)と思います。／...(da) to omoimasu.／I think that ....

船／fune／ship / boat

飛行機／hikōki／airplane

## Material

Use the picture below to practice having a conversation.



### 【Time and Cost from Tokyo】

京都 Kyoto		富士山 Fuji-san		沖縄 Okinawa		福岡 Fukuoka	
Bus	Shinkansen	Bus	Car	Airplane	Ship	Airplane	Shinkansen
6 hours	2.5 hours	2 hours	2 hours	2.5 hours	3 days	2 hours	5 hours
7000 yen	20000 yen	1500 yen	3000 yen	30000 yen	20000 yen	20000 yen	25000 yen

## Listening

Listen to the conversation between the man and woman and choose the correct answer.

**Q1** On a station platform, pointing at a train

- Track 53 1. The train currently at the platform goes to Hakone.
- 2. The next train goes to Hakone.
- 3. A train at a different platform goes to Hakone.

**Q2** At a train station ticket counter

- Track 54 1. The subway goes straight to Roppongi Hills.
- 2. The bus goes straight to Roppongi Hills.
- 3. It takes a bus and a subway ride to get to Roppongi Hills.

**Q3** On a street

- Track 55 1. It takes about 10 minutes from here to Tokyo Dome by bus.
- 2. It takes about 10 minutes from here to Tokyo Dome by bicycle.
- 3. It takes about 10 minutes from here to Tokyo Dome by train.

**Q4** Talking with a co-worker at work

- Track 56 1. It takes about 3 hours from Tokyo to Osaka by plane.
- 2. It takes about 3 hours from Tokyo to Osaka by Shinkansen.
- 3. It takes about 1 hour from Tokyo to Osaka by Shinkansen.

## Role playing

Role play using the cards below.

1.

**A:** You are currently in Shibuya but want to go to Iidabashi. Ask a person nearby how to get there and how long it takes.

**B:** You are currently in Shibuya. Look at the picture on page 94 and answer A-san's questions. When there is something you don't know, simply say you don't know.

2.

**A:** You want to go to B-san's hometown. Ask B-san how to get there, how long it takes, and how much it costs.

**B:** A-san wants to go to your hometown. Answer his or her questions.

## Do you remember?

Use the phrases you have studied in this unit in situations ①–③ below.

①

How long ...  
to Tokyo?

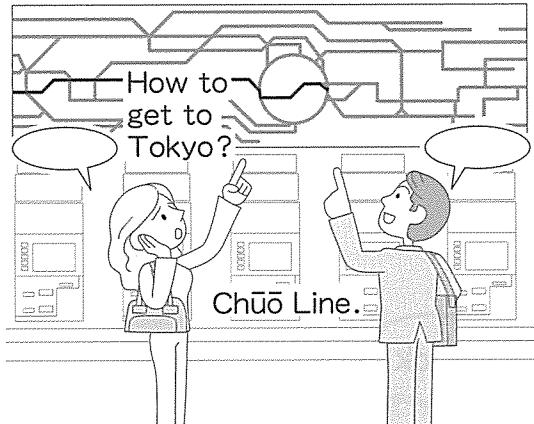
20 mins.



②

How to  
get to  
Tokyo?

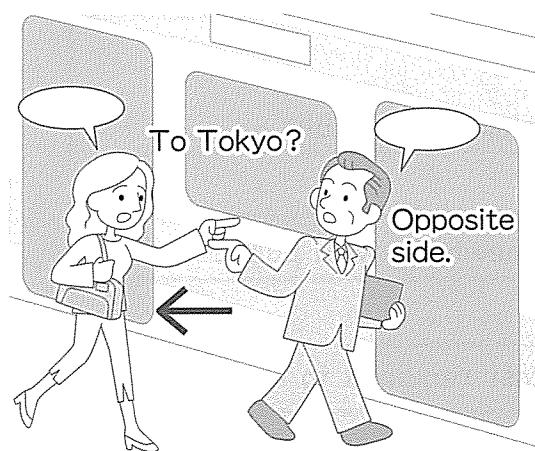
Chūō Line.



③

To Tokyo?

Opposite  
side.



## Phrases for This Unit

### Unit Phrases

- これ、横浜に行きますか。  
よこはま 行くますか。  
Kore, Yokohama ni ikimasu ka. Does this [train] go to Yokohama?
- 新宿までどうやって行けばいいですか。  
しんじゅく まで どうやつて 行けば  
いいですか。  
Shinjuku made dōyatte ikeba ii desu ka. How do you get to Shinjuku?
- 東京から京都までどのくらいかかりますか。  
とうきょう から きょうと まで どのくら  
いかかりますか。  
Tōkyō kara Kyōto made donogurai kakarimasu ka. How long does it take from Tokyo to Kyoto?

### Useful expressions

- ~ぐらいです。  
... gurai desu. It's about ....
- たぶん  
tabun probably/I think
- いくらぐらいかかりますか。  
ikura gurai kakarimasu ka. About how much does it cost?
- ~ (だ) と思います。  
おも ... (da) to omoimasu. I think that ....

### Check!

#### Now I can...

- Confirm how to get to a place with public transportation
- Ask for the best route somewhere with public transportation
- Ask about the time and cost required to reach a destination

## Remember and Use!

### TIME and HOURS

TIME 一時(ーじ -ji)	MINUTES 分(-ふん -fun / -ぶん -pun)		
-AM / -PM 午前(ごぜん gozen) / 午後(ごご gogo)	5 ごふん go-fun	10 じゅつぶん juppun	
じゅういちじ jūichi-ji じゅうじ jiū-ji くじ ku-ji はちじ hachi-ji しちじ shichi-ji	15 じゅうごふん jūgo-fun	20 にじゅつぶん nijuppun	
じゅうにじ jūni-ji いちじ ichi-ji にじ ni-ji さんじ san-ji ろくじ roku-ji ごじ go-ji	25 にじゅうごふん nijūgo-fun	30 さんじゅつぶん / はん sanjuppun / han	
11 12 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	35 さんじゅうごふん sanjūgo-fun	40 よんじゅつぶん yonjuppun	
	45 よんじゅうごふん yonjūgo-fun	50 ごじゅつぶん gojuppun	
what time = 何時(なんじ nan-ji)	55 ごじゅうごふん gojūgo-fun	?	なんぶん nampun

→ See p.177, Grammar

#### 1. Fill out the Q&A like the example below.

(1) Q: 今、何時ですか。

Ima nan-ji desu ka.

A: (ごぜん) ごじゅつぶんです。

(Gozen) go-ji juppun desu.

Ex. 5:10 a.m. 1. 7:40 a.m. 2. 9:15 p.m. 3. 8:50 a.m. 4. 4:05 p.m. 5. 1:30 p.m.

(2) Q: 仕事は何時からですか。

Shigoto wa nan-ji kara desu ka.

A: (ごぜん) はちじはんからです。

(Gozen) hachi-ji han kara desu.

Ex. 仕事 shigoto 8:30 a.m. 1. 授業 jugyō 9:50 a.m. 2. 店 mise 10:00 a.m.

HOURS 時間(じかん -jikan)	MINUTES 分(ふん -fun / ぶん -pun)
Ex. 2 hours → にじかん ni-jikan 4.5 hours → よじかんはん yo-jikan han	Same as the readings for minutes in a timetable. Note: 3 hours and 20 minutes → さんじかんにじゅつぶん san-jikan nijuppun

#### 2. Fill out the Q&A like the example below.

(1) Q: どのぐらいかかりますか。

Donogurai kakarimasu ka.

A: にじかんぐらいです。

Ni-jikan gurai desu.

Ex. 2 hours 1. 1 hour 2. 2 hours 15 minutes

3. 4 hours 45 minutes 4. 9.5 hours

## CALENDAR

DAYS -曜日 (-ようび -yōbi)							+ に / ni [particle]
Sunday にちようび Nichiyōbi	Monday げつようび Getsuyōbi	Tuesday かようび Kayōbi	Wednesday すいようび Suiyōbi	Thursday もくようび Mokuyōbi	Friday きんようび Kin'yōbi	Saturday どようび Doyōbi	

DATES -日 (-にち -nichi / -か -ka)							+ に / ni [particle]
1 ついたち tsuitachi	2 ふつか futsuka	3 みつか mikka	4 よっか yokka	5 いつか itsuka	6 むいか muika	7 なのか nanoka	
8 ようか yōka	9 ここのか kokonoka	10 とおか tōka	11 じゅういちにち jūichi-nichi	12 じゅうににち jūni-nichi	13 じゅうさんにち jūsan-nichi	14 じゅうよっか jūyokka	
15 じゅうごにち jūgo-nichi	16 じゅうろくにち jūroku-nichi	17 じゅうしちにち jūshichi-nichi	18 じゅうはちにち jūhachi-nichi	19 じゅうくにち jūku-nichi	20 はつか hatsuka	21 にじゅういちにち nijūichi-nichi	
22 にじゅうににち nijūni-nichi	23 にじゅうさん nichī nijūsan-nichi	24 にじゅうよっか nijūyokka	25 にじゅうごにち nijūgo-nichi	26 にじゅうろくにち nijūroku-nichi	27 にじゅうしちにち nijūshichi-nichi	28 にじゅうはちにち nijūhachi-nichi	
29 にじゅうくにち nijūku-nichi	30 さんじゅうにち sanjū-nichi	31 さんじゅういちにち sanjūichi-nichi	* Exceptional readings are in bold				

MONTH -月 (-がつ -gatsu)						+ に / ni [particle]
1 January いちがつ ichi-gatsu	2 February にがつ ni-gatsu	3 March さんがつ san-gatsu	4 April しがつ shi-gatsu	5 May ごがつ go-gatsu	6 June ろくがつ roku-gatsu	
7 July しちがつ shichi-gatsu	8 August はちがつ hachi-gatsu	9 September くがつ ku-gatsu	10 October じゅうがつ jū-gatsu	11 November じゅういちがつ jūichi-gatsu	12 December じゅうにがつ jūni-gatsu	

VOCABULARY			+ に / ni	DURATION OF THE TIME		
	Last kyōnen	This kotoshi	Next rainen	Year +ねん(かん) +nen(kan)	1 いちねん(かん) ichi-nen(kan)	2 にねん(かん) ni-nen(kan)
Month	せんげつ sengetsu	こんげつ kongetsu	らいげつ raigetsu	Month +かけつ(かん) +kagetsu(kan)	1 いっかけつ ikkagetsu(kan)	2 にかけつ ni-kagetsu(kan)
Week	せんしゅう senshū	こんしゅう konshū	らいしゅう raishū	Week +しゅうかん +shūkan	1 いっしゅうかん isshūkan	2 にしゅうかん ni-shūkan
Day	きのう kinō	きょう kyō	あした ashita	Day [Date](+かん) [Date](+kan)	1 いちにち* ichi-nichi	2 ふつか(かん) futsuka(kan)

\* Note the difference between "ichi-nichi" (one day) and "tsuitachi" (the 1st day of the month)



# I'm going to an art museum.

美術館に行きます。  
ひじゅつかん

Bijutsukan ni ikimasu.

## Talking about plans and activities

予定や行動について話す

### GOALS FOR UNIT 8

- Talk about plans and what you are about to do
- Ask about things that have happened and places people have been to
- Talk about interests and wants

## Phrase 1

Talk about what you are about to do.

Track  
57

美術館に行きます。  
びじゅつかん い

Bijutsukan ni ikimasu.

I'm going to an art museum.

**NOTE** “[Place] ni ikimasu” means “[I am] going to go to [place]”. The phrase “\_\_\_\_ ni ikimasu” can be combined with verb stems to indicate a purpose for going, as in “tabe ni ikimasu” (= “I am going to eat.”)

### Ex.

田中 : どこに行きますか。  
たなか い

ジョン : 美術館に行きます。  
びじゅつかん い

Tanaka : Doko ni ikimasu ka.

Jon : Bijutsukan ni ikimasu.

Tanaka : Where are you going?

John : I'm going to an art museum.

Practice  
A

\_\_\_\_ 行きます。

Use the following words with the phrase “\_\_\_\_ ni ikimasu.”

美術館  
びじゅつかん

bijutsukan

art museum

新宿  
しんじゅく

Shinjuku

Shinjuku

友だちのうち  
とも

tomodachi no uchi

a friend's house

本屋  
ほんや

hon-ya

bookstore

→ See Appendix, Shops

買い物  
かもの

kaimono

shopping

公園  
こうえん

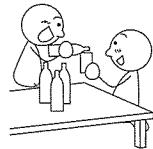
kōen

park

飲み  
のみ

nomi

... to drink



ごはんを食べ  
た

gohan o tabe

... to have food

うちに帰ります\*  
かえ

uchi ni kaerimasu\*

go home

\* “Kaerimasu” is used instead of “ikimasu” when one is going to one's own house.



Put the words from Practice A in < > and practice having a conversation.

John-san runs into his co-worker Tanaka-san on the way home from work.

ジョン : おつかれさまです。

田中 : おつかれさまです。ジョンさん、これからどこに行きますか。

ジョン : <新宿>に行きます。田中さんは?

田中 : 私はうちに帰ります。

ジョン : じゃ、駅まで一緒に行きましょう。

田中 : はい、行きましょう。

Jon : Otsukaresama desu.

Tanaka : Otsukaresama desu. Jon-san, korekara  
doko ni ikimasu ka.

Jon : < Shinjuku > ni ikimasu. Tanaka-san wa?

Tanaka : Watashi wa uchi ni kaerimasu.

Jon : Ja, eki made issho ni ikimashō.

Tanaka : Hai, ikimashō.

John : Hello.

Tanaka : Hello. John-san, where are you going right  
now?

John : I'm going to Shinjuku. How about you,  
Tanaka-san?

Tanaka : I'm going home.

John : Well, then let's go to the station together.

Tanaka : Okay, let's do that.

### MEMO

おつかれさまです。／Otsukaresama desu.／Hello. / Goodbye. ["Otsukaresama desu" is a greeting  
used in the workplace instead of "Hello." or "Goodbye."]

これから／korekara／right now, from now

駅まで／eki made／[up] to the station

一緒に／issho ni／together

行きましょう。／ikimashō.／Let's go.

## Phrase 2

Talk about prior actions.

Track  
58

昨日はうちで日本語を勉強しました。  
きのう にほんご べんきょう

Kinō wa uchi de Nihon-go o benkyō shimashita.

I studied Japanese at home yesterday.

**NOTE** In the past tense, masu verbs end in “-mashita”. The particle “de” is used to indicate the place where an action occurred. “Nani o shimashita ka” means “What did you do?”

### Ex.

田中 : 昨日は何をしましたか。  
たなか きのう なに

ジョン : (昨日は) うちで日本語を勉強しました。  
きのう にほんご べんきょう

Tanaka : Kinō wa nani o shimashita ka.

Jon : (Kinō wa) uchi de Nihon-go o  
benkyō shimashita.

Tanaka : What did you do yesterday?

John : I studied Japanese at home  
(yesterday).

A-1 ました。

Change the “masu” portion of the following words to “\_\_\_\_\_ mashita.”

日本語を勉強し(ます)  
にほんご べんきょう

Nihon-go o benkyō shi(masu)

study Japanese

友だちに会い(ます)  
とも あ

tomodachi ni ai(masu)

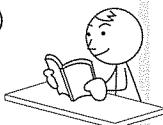
meet a friend

ごはんを食べ(ます)  
た

gohan o tabe(masu)

have some food

本を読み(ます)  
ほん よ



hon o yomi(masu)

read a book

テレビを見(ます)  
み

terebi o mi(masu)

watch TV

散歩し(ます)  
さんぽ

sampo shi(masu)

take a walk

買い物し(ます)  
か もの

kaimono shi(masu)

go shopping

仕事し(ます)  
しごと

shigoto shi(masu)

work



うちにい(ます)  
うち い

uchi ni i(masu)

stay at home

Practice  
A-2

\_\_\_\_\_は、何をしましたか。 *A-i or B-i nani o shimashita ka.*

Use the following words with the phrase "\_\_\_\_\_ wa nani o shimashita ka."

昨日  
きのう

kinō

yesterday

週末  
しゅうまつ

shūmatsu

weekend

先週  
せんしゅう

senshū

last week

→ See p.104, Calendar

Practice  
B

Put the words from Practice A-1 and A-2 in < > below and the name of a place in \_\_\_\_\_ practice having a conversation.

田中 : ジョンさん、<sup>A-2</sup>〈昨日〉はどこか行きましたか。

ジョン : 新宿に行きました。／うちにいました。

田中 : 新宿／うちで何をしましたか。

ジョン : <sup>A-1</sup>〈日本語を勉強し〉ました。それから、<sup>A-1</sup>〈ごはんを食べ〉ました。

田中さんは、<sup>A-2</sup>〈昨日〉何をしましたか。

田中 : 私はうちで<sup>A-1</sup>〈本を読み〉ました。

Tanaka : Jon-san, <sup>A-2</sup>< kinō > wa dokoka ikimashita ka.

Jon : Shinjuku ni ikimashita. / Uchi ni imashita.

Tanaka : Shinjuku / uchi de nani o shimashita ka.

Jon : <sup>A-1</sup>< Nihon-go o benkyō shi > mashita.

Sorekara, <sup>A-1</sup>< gohan o tabe > mashita.

Tanaka-san wa <sup>A-2</sup>< kinō > nani o shimashita ka.

Tanaka : Watashi wa uchi de <sup>A-1</sup>< hon o yomi > mashita.

Tanaka : John-san, did you go anywhere yesterday?

John : I went to Shinjuku. / I stayed at home.

Tanaka : What did you do at Shinjuku / home?

John : I studied Japanese. Then, I had something to eat.

What did you do yesterday,

Tanaka-san?

Tanaka : I read a book at home.

MEMO

どこか行きましたか。/ Dokoka ikimashita ka. / Did you go somewhere/anywhere?

それから / sorekara / and, after that

[Place] で [Verb] / [Place] de [Verb] / [Verb] at [place] \*denotes the location of an action

## Phrase 3

Talk about what you want to do.

Track  
59

すもうを見たいです。  
み

Sumō o mitai desu.

I want to watch sumo wrestling.

**NOTE**

The verb-ending “      tai desu” attaches to verb stems to mean “I want to/would like to [verb]”. For example, “tabemasu” → “tabetai desu” (I want to eat.)

### Ex.

田中 : 今度の休み、何をしますか。  
たなか こんど やす なに

ジョン : すもうを見たいです。  
み

Tanaka : Kondo no yasumi, nani o shimasu ka.

Jon : Sumō o mitai desu.

Tanaka : What are you going to do next holiday?

John : I want to watch sumo wrestling.

Practice  
**A-1**

Change the “masu” portion of the following words to “      tai desu.”

すもうを見(ます)  
み

sumō o mi(masu)  
watch sumo wrestling

服を買(ます)  
ふく か

fuku o kai(masu)  
buy clothes

日本語を勉強(ます)  
にほんご べんきょう

Nihon-go o benkyō shi(masu)  
study Japanese

遊びに行(ます)  
あそ い

asobi ni iki(masu)  
go hang out (with friends)

旅行に行(ます)  
りょこう い

ryokō ni iki(masu)  
go on a trip

海／山に行(ます)  
うみ／やま い

umi/yama ni iki(masu)  
go to the beach / mountains

家族に会(ます)  
かぞく あ

kazoku ni ai(masu)  
see (my) family

ジョギングし(ます)

jogingu shi(masu)  
jog

ゆっくりし(ます)

yukkuri shi(masu)  
relax/take it easy

Practice  
A-2

\_\_\_\_\_、何をしますか。  
なに

Use the following words with the phrase “[Time period], nani o shimasu ka.”

今度の休み  
こんど やす

kondo no yasumi  
the next holiday/day off

週末  
しゅうまつ

shūmatsu  
weekend

ゴールデンウィーク

goruden wīku  
Golden Week\*

夏休み  
なつ やす

natsu-yasumi  
summer break

\* "Golden week" is a series of week-long holidays that occurs from late April to early May.

Practice  
B

Put the words from Practice A-1 and A-2 in < > and practice having a conversation.

田中 : ジョンさん、<sup>A-2</sup>〈今度の休み〉、何をしますか。

ジョン : <sup>A-1</sup>〈すもうを見〉たいです。田中さんは?

田中 : 私も <sup>A-1</sup>〈すもうを見〉たいです。／私は <sup>A-1</sup>〈ゆっくりし〉たいです。

Tanaka : Jon-san, <sup>A-2</sup>< kondo no yasumi >,  
nani o shimasu ka.

Jon : <sup>A-1</sup>< Sumō o mi > tai desu.

Tanaka-san wa?

Tanaka : Watashi mo <sup>A-1</sup>< sumō o mi > tai desu.  
/ Watashi wa <sup>A-1</sup><yukkuri shi> tai desu.

Tanaka : John-san, what are you doing on your  
next day off?

John : I want to see some sumo. How about  
you?

Tanaka : I want to see sumo wrestling, too. /  
I want to relax.

## Column

The English language uses the phrase “Would you like ...?” to make recommendations or invite a person to do something, but the Japanese when making invitations phrase “...tai desu ka.” is not used in Japanese.

For example, the phrase “Would you like a coffee?” translates into Japanese as “Kōhī o nomimasu ka.” or “Kōhī o nomimasen ka.”, or literally “Will you/Won’t you have coffee?”

Ending these sorts of question with “masu ka” asks the listener for his or her intent, while “masen ka” is more of an invitation.

## Dialogue



Practice having a conversation by replacing the words in (1)–(4) with the words below.

田中 : ジョンさん、週末、何をしましたか。 Tanaka : Jon-san, shūmatsu nani o shimashita ka.

ジョン : (1)新宿でごはんを食べました。 Jon : (1)Shinjuku de gohan o tabemashita.

田中さんは？ Tanaka san wa?

田中 : 私はうちでゆっくりしました。 Tanaka : Watashi wa uchi de yukkuri shimashita.

今度の週末は何をしますか。 Kondo no shūmatsu wa nani o shimasuka.

ジョン : (2)こどもと(3)公園に行きます。 Jon : (2)Kodomo to (3)kōen ni ikimasu.

田中 : そうですか。 Tanaka : Sō desu ka.

(3)公園で何をしますか。 (3)Kōen de nani o shimasuka.

ジョン : (4)写真を撮りたいです。 Jon : (4)Shashin o toritai desu.

田中 : いいですね。 Tanaka : Ii desu ne.

① (1) サイクリングしました

saikuringu shimashita

(2) 友だち

tomodachi

(3) 海

umi

(4) 本を読みたい

hon o yomitai

② (1) 友だちに会いました。

tomodachi ni aimashita

(2) 家族

kazoku

(3) ショッピングモール

shopingu-mōru (= shopping mall)

(4) おみやげを買いたい

omiyage o kaitai (omiyage = souvenir)

### MEMO

[Person] と [verb] / [Person] to [verb] / [verb] with a [person]

To say “by myself” or “alone”, use the phrase “ひとりで hitori de”.

## Listening

Listen to the conversation between the man and woman and choose the correct answer.

**Q1** After work

- Track 61
1. The woman is going to a drug store.
  2. The man is going to buy food with a friend.
  3. The woman is going to a bookstore.

**Q2** Monday morning at work

- Track 62
1. The woman went to a park with her family.
  2. The man is going to work on the weekend.
  3. The man and woman went to a park.

**Q3** Two friends are talking about the summer break

Track 63

1. They are going to the beach together.
2. The man doesn't want to go to the beach.
3. The woman wants to relax at home.

**Q4** Two friends are talking

Track 64

1. The man wants to study Japanese on the weekend.
2. The man wants to go out somewhere.
3. The man wants to study with the woman.

## Role playing

Role play using the cards below.

1.

**A:** You are showing B-san around Tokyo. Ask B-san questions like where he/she wants to go or what he/she wants to eat, then decide where the two of you will go and what you will do.

**B:** On Wednesday you met A-san, who you are now having show you around Tokyo. Decide where to go together.

2.

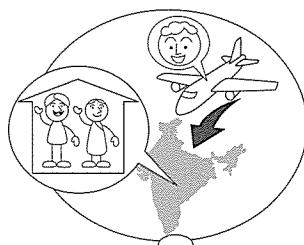
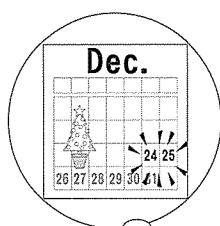
**A:** You are back at work after a weeklong holiday. Talk to B-san about your time off (think about what you did on your own). B-san is also taking some time off next week, so ask about his/her upcoming plans.

**B:** Ask A-san questions like where he/she went for the holiday and what he/she did. Also talk with A-san about your plans for the time off you are taking next week (think about what you will do on your own).

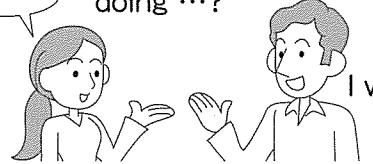
## Do you remember?

Use the phrases you have studied in this unit in situations ①–③ below.

①



What are you  
doing ...?



I want to ...

②

ABC Company

Where ...?

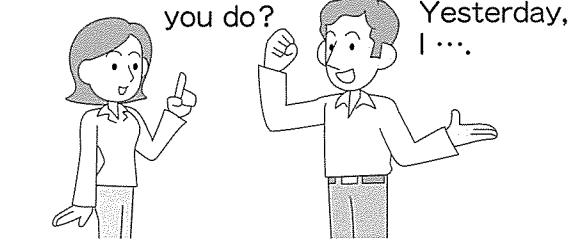


I'm going to ...

③



What did  
you do?



Yesterday,  
I ...

## Phrases For This Unit

### Unit Phrases

- 美術館に行きます。  
びじゅつかん い  
Bijutsukan ni ikimasu. I'm going to an art museum.
- 昨日はうちで日本語を勉強しました。  
きのう にほんご べんきょう  
Kinō wa uchi de Nihon-go o benkyō shimashita. I studied Japanese at home yesterday.
- すもうを見たいです。  
み  
Sumō o mitai desu. I want to watch Sumo wrestling.

### Useful expressions

- おつかれさまです。 Otsukaresama desu. Hello. / Goodbye. [a greeting used in the workplace instead of "Hello." or "Goodbye."]
- 一緒に行きましょう。 Issho ni ikimashō. Let's go together.
- これから korekara from now
- [Place] で [verb] [Place] de [verb] [verb] at [place]
- [Person] と [verb] [Person] to [verb] [verb] with a [person]

Check!

### ✓ Now I can...

- Talk about plans and what you are about to do
- Ask about things that have happened and places people have been to
- Talk about interests and wants

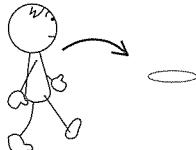
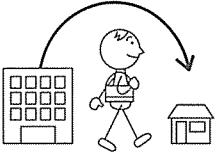
## Remember and Use!

### ● Verb Conjugations (masu-form) ●

	Non-past	Past
Affirmative	_____ます _____masu	_____ました _____mashita
Negative	_____ません _____masen	_____ませんでした _____masendeshita

→ See p.171, Grammar

### ● “\_\_\_\_\_ni \_\_\_\_\_masu” Verbs ●

[place / person]に_____ます	[place / person] ni _____masu
go 行きます／ikimasu 行く／iku	 come 来ます／kimasu 来る／kuru
return / go home 帰ります／kaerimasu 帰る／kaeru	 meet 会います／aimasu 会う／au

→ See Appendix, Verb Conjugation List

#### 1. Make affirmative and negative sentences in different tenses using a noun with the particle “ni”.

Ex. 来週、アメリカに帰ります。

Raishū, Amerika ni kaerimasu.

I'm going back to America next week.

#### 2. Make yes-or-no questions and then answer them.

Ex. Q: 昨日、友だちに会いましたか。

Kinō, tomodachi ni aimashita ka.

Did you meet with a friend yesterday?

A: はい、会いました。/いいえ、会いませんでした。

Hai, aimashita. / lie, aimasendeshita. Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

#### 3. Make questions using the word “itsu” (= when) and answer them.

Ex. Q: いつ日本に来ましたか。

Itsu Nihon ni kimashita ka.

When did you come to Japan?

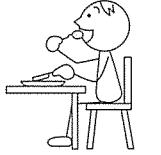
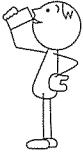
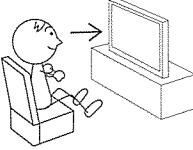
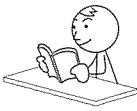
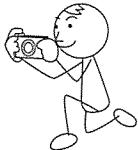
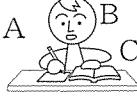
A: 去年の8月に来ました。/先月に来ました。

Kyonen no 8-gatsu ni kimashita. / Sengetsu ni kimashita. Last August. / Last month.

\* When answering a “when” question, some time words require the particle “ni”, but not all do.

→ See p.104, Calendar

## ● “\_\_\_\_ o \_\_\_\_ masu” Verbs ●

[object]を____ます [object] o ____masu	
eat 食べます / tabemasu 食べる / taberu	
drink 飲みます / nomimasu 飲む / nomu	
look, see, watch 見ます / mimasu 見る / miru	
read 読みます / yomimasu 読む / yomu	
buy 買います / kaimasu 買う / kau	
listen, hear 聞きます / kikimasu 聞く / kiku	
take photos (写真を)撮ります / (shashin o) torimasu 撮る / toru	
study 勉強します / benkyō shimasu 勉強する / benkyō suru	

1. Make affirmative and negative sentences in different tenses using a noun with the particle “o”.

Ex. 昨日、日本のテレビを見ました。

Kinō, Nihon no terebi o mimashita. I watched Japanese TV yesterday.

2. Make questions using verbs and answer them.

Ex. Q: 昨日、ビールを飲みましたか。

Kinō, biru o nomimashita ka. Did you drink beer yesterday?

A: はい、飲みました。/いいえ、飲みませんでした。

Hai, nomimashita. / lie, nomimasen deshita. Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

3. Make questions using the phrase “doko de” (= where at) and answer them.

Ex. Q: どこでそのカメラを買いましたか。

Doko de sono kamera o kaimashita ka. Where did you buy that camera?

A: 秋葉原で買いました。

Akihabara de kaimashita

At Akihabara.

## Good to Know

### ① Point card service

Japanese stores often have point cards, and cashiers will ask customers for their point card when they make a purchase. Some shops offer gifts or discounts if a certain amount of points are accrued.

Here is a sample conversation.

Clerk: Do you have point card? Pointo kādo, omochi desu ka.

Customer: No, I don't. Arimasen.

Clerk: Would you like to make one? Otsukuri shimasu ka.

Customer: No thanks. / Yes, please. Kekkō desu. / Onegai shimasu.

→ See p.90 for how to request gift wrapping or delivery.

### ② “Kekkō desu.”

The phrase “kekko desu.” was introduced in Unit 4 as a way to “No, thank you,” but originally means “It’s fine the way it is” or “That way is fine.” “Kekkō desu.” can be used as a way to grant a person permission to do something (i.e. “The way you want to do it is fine.”), but can also be used to make a refusal (= “No, thank you.”).

Because this expression is used frequently and in a variety of situations, even native speakers of Japanese are sometimes unsure of its meaning.

A general rule of thumb is that the phrase “[Noun] de kekkō desu.” is used to give permission, while “[Noun] wa kekkō desu.” is used to refuse something unnecessary.

Ex.

Q: We only have tea, but would you like some?

A: Kekkō desu.

1. Ocha de kekkō desu. = Tea would be fine.

2. Ocha wa kekkō desu. = I’m fine without tea.

→ See p.58, Unit 4 and p.72, Unit 5.



# How do you like living in Japan?

日本の生活はどうですか。  
にほんせいかつ

Nihon no seikatsu wa dō desu ka.

## Talking about impressions

感想を言う

### GOALS FOR UNIT 9

- Talk about your life in Japan
- Talk about your impression of things that happened in the past

## Phrase 1

Talk about your impression of something.



日本の生活はどうですか。  
にほん せいかつ

Nihon no seikatsu wa dō desu ka. How do you like living in Japan?

**NOTE** “\_\_\_\_wa dō desu ka.” means “How is \_\_\_\_?” or “How do you like \_\_\_\_?” and can be used to ask someone what they think of something.

**Ex.**

田中 : 日本の生活はどうですか。  
たなか にほん せいかつ

ジョン : 楽しいです。  
たの

Tanaka : Nihon no seikatsu wa dō desu ka.

Jon : Tanoshii desu.

Tanaka : How do you like living in Japan?

John : It's fun.

Practice  
**A-1**

\_\_\_\_\_です。  
Make sentences ending in “\_\_\_\_\_ desu” using the words below.

楽しい  
たの



tanoshii

fun / enjoyable

おもしろい



omoshiroi

fun/interesting

おいしい



oishii

delicious/tasty

高い  
たか

安い  
やす

むずかしい  
muzukashii

takai

yasui

difficult

expensive/high

cheap

いい



ii

good

便利



benri

convenient

きれい



kirei

clean/beautiful

Practice  
A-2

\_\_\_\_\_はどうですか。

Make questions using the following words with the phrase “\_\_\_\_\_ wa dō desu ka.”

日本の生活  
にほん せいかつ  
Nihon no seikatsu  
life in Japan

日本料理  
にほんりょうり  
Nihon ryōri  
Japanese food

日本語  
にほんご  
Nihon-go  
the Japanese language

今住んでいるところ  
います  
ima sundeiru tokoro  
the place where you/I live now

Practice  
B

Put the words from Practice A-1 or A-2 in <      > and practice having a conversation.

田中 : ジョンさん、<sup>A-2</sup>〈日本の生活〉はどうですか。

ジョン : (すごく) <sup>A-1</sup>〈楽しい〉です。

田中 : そうですか。<sup>A-2</sup>〈今住んでいるところ〉はどうですか。

ジョン : (とても) <sup>A-1</sup>〈便利〉ですよ。

Tanaka : Jon-san, <sup>A-2</sup>< Nihon no seikatsu > wa  
dō desu ka.

Jon : (Sugoku) <sup>A-1</sup>< tanoshii > desu.

Tanaka : Sō desu ka. <sup>A-2</sup>< Ima sundeiru tokoro >  
wa dō desu ka.

Jon : (Totemo) <sup>A-1</sup>< benri > desu yo.

Tanaka : John-san, how do you like living in Japan?

John : It's really fun.

Tanaka : How's the place where you're living right  
now?

John : It's very convenient.

## MEMO

すごく / sugoku / very/extremely [casual]

とても / totemo / very [polite]

## Phrase 2

Talk about your impression of something that happened in the past.

Track  
66

旅行はどうでしたか。  
りょこう

Ryokō wa dō deshita ka.

How was your trip?

**NOTE** “Dō deshita ka” is the past tense of “dō desu ka” and is used to ask a person for their impression of something that has already happened.  
→ See the MEMO on p.123 for the past tense of different adjectives.

### Ex.

田中 たなか : 旅行はどうでしたか。  
りょこう

ジョン：よかったです。

Tanaka : Ryokō wa dō deshita ka?

Jon : Yokatta desu.

Tanaka : How was your trip?

John : It was good.

### Practice A-1

\_\_\_\_\_はどうでしたか。

Use the following words with the phrase “\_\_\_\_\_ wa dō deshita ka.”

旅行  
りょこう  
ryokō  
trip

パーティー  
pātī  
party

飲み会  
の  
かい  
nomikai  
drinking party at izakaya\*

週末  
しゅうまつ  
shūmatsu  
weekend

\* izakaya = Japanese-style pub

### Practice A-2

\_\_\_\_\_です。

Answer the questions in Practice A-1 with a sentence ending in “\_\_\_\_\_ desu.”

よかったです  
yokatta  
(it was) good



楽しかった  
tanoshikatta  
(it was) fun/enjoyable



おもしろかった  
omoshirokatta  
(it was) fun/interesting



すばらしかった  
subarashikatta  
(it was) wonderful



つまらなかつた  
tsumaranakatta  
(it was) boring



いそがしかつた  
isogashikatta  
(it was) busy



## Practice A-3

でした。

Answer the questions in Practice A-1 with sentences ending in "\_\_\_\_\_ deshita."

まあまあ

māmā

(it was) so-so

ひま

hima

(it was) free/not busy

大変

taihen

(it was) terrible/hard/tough



## Practice B

Put words from Practice A-1, A-2, or A-3 in &lt;      &gt; and practice having a conversation.

Use positive adjectives in ① and negative adjectives in ②.

1

田中 : ジョンさん、<sup>A-1</sup>〈旅行〉はどうでしたか。  
たなかジョン : <sup>A-2</sup>〈楽しかった〉です。  
たの田中 : それはよかったですね。  
たなかTanaka : Jon-san, <sup>A-1</sup>< ryokō > wa dō deshita ka.Jon : <sup>A-2</sup>< Tanoshikatta > desu.

Tanaka : Sore wa yokatta desu ne.

Tanaka : John-san, how was your trip?

Jon : It was fun.

Tanaka : I'm glad to hear that.

2

田中 : ジョンさん、<sup>A-1</sup>〈旅行〉はどうでしたか。  
たなかジョン : <sup>A-2</sup><sub>A-3</sub>〈つまらなかった〉です／でした。田中 : そうですか。  
たなかTanaka : Jon-san, <sup>A-1</sup>< ryokō > wa dō deshita ka.Jon : <sup>A-2</sup><sub>A-3</sub>< Tsumaranakatta > desu/deshita.

Tanaka : Sō desu ka.

Tanaka : Jon-san, how was your trip?

John : It was boring.

Tanaka : Was it?

## MEMO

それはよかったですね。/Sore wa yokatta desu ne. /That's good. / I'm glad to hear that.

\* There are two types of adjectives in Japanese, i-adjectives and na-adjectives, both of which conjugate differently. Practice A-2 describes i-adjectives, while na-adjectives are taken up in Practice A-3. → See p.129

**Dialogue**

Practice having a conversation by replacing the words (1)–(5) with the words below. You can expand part of the conversation using the information on the right page.

佐藤 さとう : (1) 週末はどうでしたか。  
 カレン : すごく (2) 楽しかったです。  
 はじめて (3) 京都に行きました。  
 京都の町はとてもよかったです。  
 佐藤 さとう : そうですか。  
 (4) 日本のお寺はどうですか。  
 カレン : とても (5) きれいです。

Satō : (1) Shūmatsu wa dō deshita ka.  
 Karen : Sugoku (2) tanoshikatta desu.  
 Hajimete (3) Kyōto ni ikimashita.  
 Kyōto no machi wa totemo yokatta desu.  
 Satō : Sō desu ka.  
 (4) Nihon no otera wa dō desu ka.  
 Karen : Totemo (5) kirei desu.

- ① (1) 昨日のパーティー  
 (2) よかった  
 (3) お好み焼きを食べました  
 (4) 日本料理  
 (5) おいしい

kinō no pāthī  
 yokatta  
 okonomiyaki o tabemashita  
 Nihon ryōri  
 oishii

- ② (1) 休み  
 (2) おもしろかった  
 (3) カラオケに行きました  
 (4) 日本のカラオケ  
 (5) すばらしい

yasumi (= holiday/day off)  
 omoshirokatta  
 karaoke ni ikimashita  
 Nihon no karaoke  
 subarashii (= wonderful)

- ③ Make your own conversation.

**MEMO**

はじめて / hajimete / for the first time

お寺 / otera / temple

## Material

Look at the picture below and practice the conversation on the left page.

Ex.

カレン / Karen



京都に行きました。Kyōto ni ikimashita.

- 町 machi (town) → よかった yokatta
- 食べ物 tabemono (food) → おいしかった oishikatta
- 京都の人 Kyōto no hito (People in Kyoto) → やさしかった yasashikatta (kind)

①

ジョン / Jon



お好み焼きを食べました。okonomiyaki o tabemashita.

- お好み焼き okonomiyaki → おいしかった oishikatta
- 店 mise (shop) → 小さかった chiisakatta (small)
- 店の人 mise no hito (shop staff) → 元気 genki (energetic)

②

クマール / Kumāru



カラオケに行きました。karaoke ni ikimashita.

- 料金 ryōkin (fee, price) → 高かった takakatta
- 日本の歌 Nihon no uta (Japanese songs) → むずかしかった muzukashikatta
- カラオケ karaoke → 楽しかった tanoshikatta

③

You



\_\_\_\_\_ ました。  
mashita.

\_\_\_\_\_ は \_\_\_\_\_ です／でした。  
wa desu/deshita.

→ See Appendix p.6, Adjective Conjugation List

## Listening

Listen to the conversation between the man and woman and choose the correct answer.

**Q1** Two friends are talking after not seeing each other for a while

-  68  
1. The woman enjoys her life in Japan.  
2. The woman's apartment is very expensive.  
3. Tokyo is very beautiful.

**Q2** Two co-workers are talking at work

-  69  
1. The food was neither good nor bad.  
2. The party at the izakaya was neither good nor bad.  
3. The party at the izakaya was fun.

**Q3** Two friends are talking

-  70  
1. The hotel was very crowded.  
2. The man had a good trip.  
3. The man was very busy on his trip.

**Q4** Two friends are talking

-  71  
1. Japanese temples are beautiful.  
2. Japanese temples are expensive.  
3. Japanese temples are old.

## Role playing

Role play using the cards below.

1.

**A:** You went on a trip last week. Tell B-san what you thought of your trip (think of the place you went on your own).

**B:** Ask A-san questions about his/her trip, such as how was the weather, food, and hotel. Also, if possible, ask what A-san did on the trip.

2.

**A:** You have recently moved to a town in Japan. Tell B-san what you think of it (talk about where you currently live).

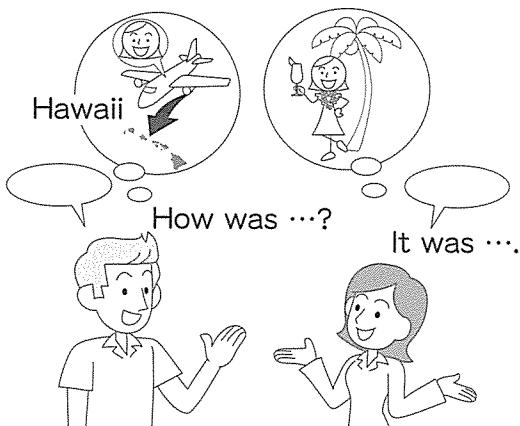
new=atarashii, town=machi,  
house/your place=uchi

**B:** A-san has recently moved. Ask about A-san's new town (=atarashii machi), house (=uchi), and what life is like there.

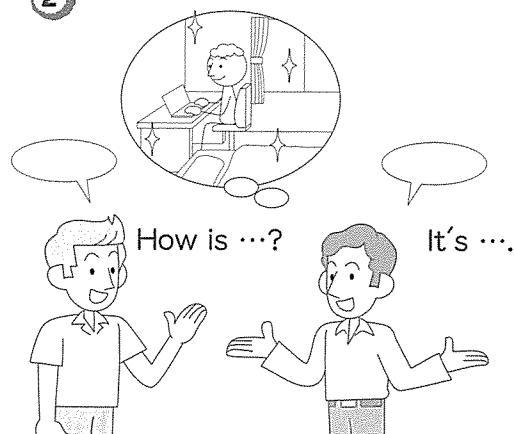
## Do you remember?

Use the phrases you have studied in this unit in situations ①–③ below.

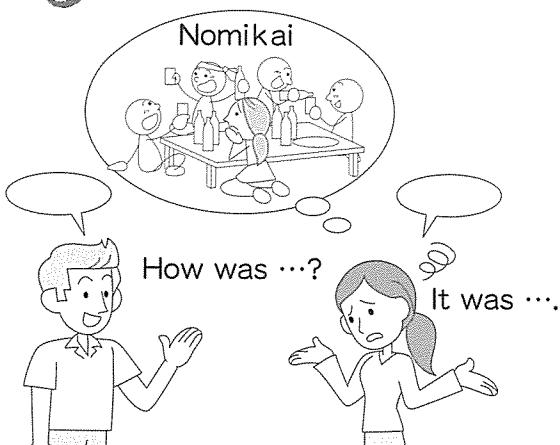
①



②



③



## Phrases for This Unit

### Unit Phrases

- 日本の生活はどうですか。  
にほん せいかつ  
Nihon no seikatsu wa dō desu ka.  
How do you like living in Japan?
- 旅行はどうでしたか。  
りょこう  
Ryokō wa dō deshita ka.  
How was your trip?

### Useful expressions

- それはよかったです。 Sore wa yokatta desune. That's good. / I'm glad to hear that.
- すごく sugoku very [casual]
- とても totomo very [polite]
- はじめて hajimete for the first time

Check!



Now I can...

Talk about my life in Japan

Talk about my impression of things that

happened in the past

## Remember and Use!

### ● I-adjective conjugations ●

	Non-past	Past
Affirmative	_____ いです _____ i desu	_____ かったです _____ katta desu
Negative	_____ くないです _____ kunai desu	_____ くなかったです _____ kunakatta desu

→ See p.176, Grammar

#### NOTE

The i-adjective “いい ii” conjugates irregularly.

	Non-past	Past
Affirmative	いいです ii desu	よかったです yokatta desu
Negative	よくないです yokunai desu	よくなかったです yokunakatta desu

### ● 10 Basic i-adjectives ●

hot あつい atsui		cold [weather] 寒い samui	
big 大きい ōkii		small 小さい chiisai	
expensive / high 高い takai		cheap 安い yasui	
difficult むずかしい muzukashii	easy / kind やさしい yasashii	fun / interesting おもしろい omoshiroi	delicious / tasty おいしい oishii

→ See Appendix p.6, Adjective Conjugation List

## ● Na-adjective conjugations ●

	Non-past	Past
Affirmative	_____です _____desu	_____でした _____deshita
Negative	_____じゃありません _____ja arimasen	_____じゃありませんでした _____ja arimasendeshita

## ● Basic na-adjectives 4 ●

convenient 便利 benri	clean / beautiful きれい kirei	quiet 静か shizuka	energetic / fine 元気 genki
------------------------	--------------------------------	---------------------	------------------------------

### 1. Make affirmative and negative sentences in different tenses.

Ex. 日本語はむずかしくないです。 Nihon-go wa muzukashikunai desu.  
 にほんご  
 京都は静かったです。 Kyōto wa shizuka deshita.  
 きょうと  
 しゆ

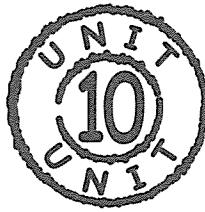
### 2. Make questions using adjectives and answer them.

Ex. Q: 東京はあついですか。 Tōkyō wa atsui desu ka.  
 とうきょう  
 A: はい、あついです。 Hai, atsui desu.  
 いいえ、あつくないです。 Iie, atsukunai desu.

Q: ホテルはきれいでしたか。 Hoteru wa kirei deshita ka.  
 A: はい、きれいでした。 Hai, kirei deshita.  
 いいえ、きれいじゃありませんでした。 Iie, kirei ja arimasendeshita.

### 3. Have a free conversation about the topics below. → See pp.120-123 and Appendix

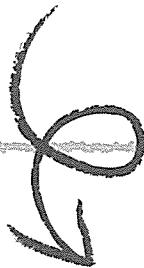
東京 とうきょう Tōkyō Tokyo	会社 かいしゃ kaisha Your company	うち uchi Your house	日本語の先生 にほんごせんせい Nihon-go no sensei Japanese teachers
昨日の晩ごはん きのう ばん kinō no bangohan What you had for dinner last night	Languages you have studied	Places you have been on	Places you have lived



# What does that taste like?

それ、どんな味ですか。  
あじ

Sore, donna aji desu ka.



Eating

食事

## GOALS FOR UNIT 10

- Understand and use taste words
- Say what a food probably tastes like based on its appearance
- Politely refuse foods you do not like/do not eat

## Phrase 1

Ask what something tastes like.

Track  
72

それ、どんな味ですか。  
あじ

Sore, donna aji desu ka.

What does that taste like?

**NOTE** "Donna" and "aji" mean "what kind of" and "taste", and are used to ask what something tastes like.

Ex.

ジョン : それ、どんな味ですか。  
あじ

田中 : あまいです。おいしいですよ。

Jon : Sore, **donna aji desu ka.**

Tanaka : Amai **desu**. Oishii desu yo.

John : What does that taste like?

Tanaka : It's sweet. It tastes good.

Practice  
A

\_\_\_\_\_です。  
Answer the question "Donna aji desu ka." using a phrase that ends in "\_\_\_\_\_ desu."

あまい

amai

sweet

からい

karai

spicy / hot



すっぱい

suppai

sour



しょっぱい

shoppai

salty

にがい

nigai

bitter

油っこい

あぶら

aburakkoi

oily

あまからい

amakarai

sweet and salty

さっぱりした味

あじ

sapparishita aji

refreshing taste

おもしろい味

あじ

omoshiroi aji

interesting taste

おいしい

oishii

delicious/good

おいしくない

oishikunai

not delicious/not good

味があまりない  
あじ

aji ga amari nai

doesn't taste like much



Put the words from Practice A in &lt;      &gt; and practice having a conversation.

→ See Pre-text p. i - iv for additional food words.

– At a restaurant –

クマール：それ、どんな味ですか。  
あじ

田中　　：〈あまい〉ですよ。食べてみますか。

クマール：じゃ、食べてみます。／いいえ、いいです。

Kumāru : Sore, donna aji desu ka

Tanaka : &lt; Amai &gt; desu yo. Tabete mimasu ka.

Kumāru : Ja, tabete mimasu. / lie, ii desu.

Kumar: What does that taste like?

Tanaka: It's sweet. Would you like to try it?

Kumar: I think I will. / No, that's okay.

MEMO

食べてみますか。／Tabete mimasu ka.／Would you like to try it? [used for food]

食べてみます。／Tabete mimasu.／I'll have a taste. / I'll try it. [used for food]

いいえ、いいです。／lie, ii desu.／No, that's okay.

## Phrase 2

Say what a food probably tastes like based on its appearance.



おいしそうですね。

Oishisō desu ne.

That looks delicious.

**NOTE** “\_\_\_\_\_ sō desu.” means “(That) looks \_\_\_\_.” and can be used to describe something based on its physical appearance. The final “i” or “na” of an adjective is removed before being attached to “sō desu”.

Ex.

ジョン : おいしそうですね。

田中 たなか : そうですね。

Jon : Oishisō desu ne.

Tanaka : Sō desu ne.

John : That looks delicious.

Tanaka : It really does.

Practice  
A

\_\_\_\_\_ そうです。  
Change the “i” portion of the following words to “\_\_\_\_\_ sō desu.”

おいし(i)

oishi(i)

delicious

あつ(i)

atsu(i)

hot

から(i)

kara(i)

spicy/hot

あま(i)

ama(i)

sweet

まず(i)

mazu(i)

gross/bad

すっぱ(i)

suppa(i)

sour

やわらか(i)

yawaraka(i)

soft

油っこ(i)  
あぶら

aburakko(i)

oily

体によさ\*  
からだ

karada ni yosa\*

healthy/good for you

\* The adjective “ii” (good) conjugates exceptionally to “yosasō desu”.

Practice  
B

Put the words from Practice A in <      > and practice having a conversation.

- Looking at a menu at a restaurant -

佐藤 さとう : 何にしますか。これはどうですか。

ジョン ジョン : うーん、ちょっと〈油っこ〉そうですね。

佐藤 さとう : じゃ、これはどうですか。

ジョン ジョン : うん、〈おいし〉そうですね。

佐藤 さとう : じゃ、これにしましょう。

Satō : Nan ni shimasu ka. Kore wa dō desu ka.

Jon : Uh, chotto < aburakko > sō desu ne.

Satō : Ja, kore wa dō desu ka.

Jon : Uh, < oishi > sō desu ne.

Satō : Ja, kore ni shimashō.

Sato : What should we get? How about this?

John : Hm, that looks a little oily.

Sato : Then how about this?

John : Yeah, that looks good.

Sato : Okay, let's get this, then.

## MEMO

何にしますか。/ Nan ni shimasu ka. / What are we/you going to have?

これはどうですか。/ Kore wa dō desu ka. / How about this?

ちょっと～そうですね。/ Chotto ...sō desu ne. / It looks a little ....

これにしましょう。/ Kore ni shimashō. / Let's have this.

## Phrase 3

Politely refuse foods you do not like.

Track  
74

豚肉はちょっと……。  
ぶたにく

**Butaniku wa chotto…….**

I can't really eat pork.

NOTE

"      wa chotto……." can be used to convey negative feelings, with an implication that you don't like or don't want to do something. Follow a "wa chotto……" statement with a reason followed by "      nan desu" to provide a polite explanation.

### Ex.

田中 たなか : これ、おいしいですよ。

クマール : すみません。豚肉はちょっと……。  
ぶたにく

ベジタリアンなんです。

Tanaka : Kore, oishii desu yo.

Kumāru : Sumimasen. Butaniku wa chotto…….  
Bejitarian nan desu.

Tanaka : This is really good.

Kumar : I'm sorry, but I can't eat pork.  
(The thing is) I'm a vegetarian.

Practice  
**A-1**

はちょっと……。

Use the following words with the phrase "      wa chotto……."

豚肉

ぶたにく  
butaniku  
pork



牛肉

ぎゅうにく  
gyūniku  
beef



卵

たまご  
tamago  
egg

生もの

なま  
namamono  
raw food

わさび

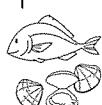
wasabi

→ See Pre-text p.iv

wasabi

シーフード

shifūdo  
seafood



からいもの

karai mono  
spicy things

あまいもの

amai mono  
sweet things

Practice  
A-2

Explain why you can't eat the foods in Practice A-1 using the following words with the phrase \_\_\_\_\_nandesu.

ベジタリアン

bejitarian

vegitarian

アレルギー

arerugi

allergy

苦手

にがて

nigate

do not really like / not good at

宗教でだめ

しゅうきょう

shūkyō de dame

for religious reasons

Practice  
B

Put the words from Practice A-1 or A-2 in < \_\_\_\_\_ > and practice having a conversation.

田中 : これ、どうですか。

クマール : <sup>A-1</sup><豚肉>ですか。<sup>A-1</sup><豚肉>はちょっと……。

田中 : そうなんですか。

クマール : はい、<sup>A-2</sup><苦手>なんです。

Tanaka : Kore, dō desu ka.

Kumāru : <sup>A-1</sup>< Butaniku > desu ka.

<sup>A-1</sup>< Butaniku > wa chotto.....

Tanaka : Sō nan desu ka.

Kumāru : Hai, <sup>A-2</sup>< nigate > nan desu.

Tanaka : How about this?

Kumar : Is it pork? I can't eat pork.

Tanaka : Oh really?

Kumar : Yes, I don't care for the taste.

## MEMO

そうなんですか。/ Sō nan desu ka. / Oh really? / Is that so? [indicates a feeling of surprise]

## Dialogue

Track  
75

Replace the words in (1) – (4) below and practice having a conversation.

ジョン : (1) 肉じゃがって、どんな味ですか。  
にく  
あじ

鈴木 : (2) あまいですよ。おいしいです。  
すずき

ジョン : そうですか。 Pointing at another food  
これは(3) からそうですね。

鈴木 : ええ、(4) からいですよ。  
すずき

ジョン : そうですか。(4) からいものは  
ちょっと……。

苦手なんです。  
にがて

鈴木 : じゃ、他のにしましょう。これは?  
ほか

ジョン : おいしそうですね。

鈴木 : じゃ、これにしましょう。  
すずき

Jon : (1) Nikujaga tte donna aji desu ka.

Suzuki : (2) Amai desu yo. Oishii desu.

Jon : Sō desu ka. Pointing at another food

Kore wa (3) karasō desu ne.

Suzuki : Ee, (4) karai desu yo.

Jon : Sō desu ka. (4) Kurai mono wa  
chotto... .

Nigate nan desu.

Suzuki : Ja, hoka no ni shimashō. Kore wa?

Jon : Oishisō desu ne.

Suzuki : Ja, kore ni shimashō.

① (1) こんにゃく

konnyaku (→ See Pre-text p.iv)

(2) 味があまりない

aji ga amari nai

(3) 油っこそう

aburakkosō

(4) 油っこい

aburakkoi

② (1) うめぼし

umeboshi (→ See Pre-text p.iii)

(2) すっぱい

suppai

(3) あまそう

amasō

(4) あまい

amai

### MEMO

～って / ...tte → See p.55 MEMO

もの / mono / thing(s)

他のにしましょう。 / Hoka no ni shimashō. / Let's have something else/another one.

これにしましょう。 / Kore ni shimashō. / Let's have this.

## Listening

Listen to the conversation between the man and woman and choose the correct answer.

**Q1** Pointing at the food on the table

- Track 76
- 1. The food is spicy.
- 2. The food is refreshing.
- 3. The food is sour.

**Q2** Looking at the food on the next table

- Track 77
- 1. The man wants to order beef.
- 2. The man doesn't like beef.
- 3. The man is going to try the beef.

**Q3** Looking at a menu

- Track 78
- 1. The salad looks oily.
- 2. The salad looks light.
- 3. The salad looks healthy.

**Q4** Looking at a menu

- Track 79
- 1. They will order spicy food.
- 2. They will not order spicy food.
- 3. They will not order anything.

## Role playing

Role play using the cards below

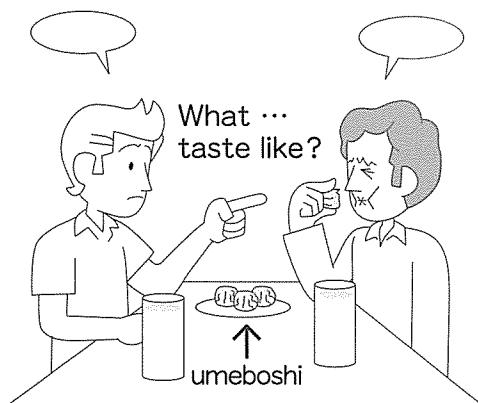
**A:** You are at an izakaya with B-san. Ask what dish B-san recommends, then ask what it tastes like, give a reason why you cannot eat it, and refuse the food.

**B:** You are at an izakaya with A-san. Look at the menu in the pre-text and recommend your favorite food.

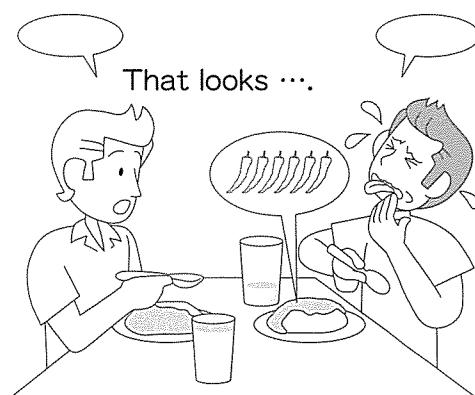
## Do you remember?

Use the phrases you have studied in this unit in situations ①–③ below.

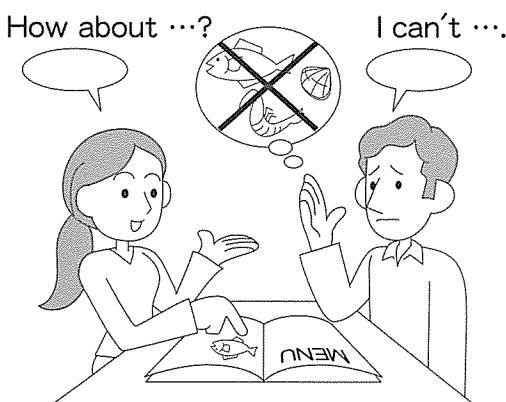
①



②



③



## Phrases for This Unit

### Unit Phrases

- それ、どんな味ですか。 Sore, donna aji desu ka. What does it taste like?
- おいしそうですね。 Oishisō desu ne. It looks delicious.
- 豚肉はちょっと……。 Butaniku wa chotto……. I can't really eat pork.

### Useful expressions

- 食べてみますか。 Tabete mimasu ka. Would you like to try it? [used with food]
- 食べてみます。 Tabete mimasu. I'll have a taste. [used with food]
- いいえ、いいです。 Iie, ii desu. No, that's okay.
- これにしましょう。 Kore ni shimashō. Let's have this.
- 苦手なんです。 Nigate nan desu. I'm not good at it. [a common refusal]
- そうなんですか。 Sō nan desu ka. Oh, really? / Is that so? [indicates surprise]

Check!

### ✓ Now I can...

- Understand and use taste words
- Say what a food probably tastes like based on its appearance
- Politely refuse foods I do not like/do not eat

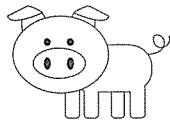
## Good to Know

### Common menu "kanji"

#### Ingredients

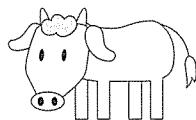
1. 豚肉

butaniku / pork



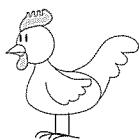
2. 牛肉

gyūniku / beef



3. 鶏肉(鳥肉)

toriniku / chicken



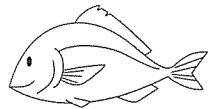
4. 卵(玉子)

tamago / egg



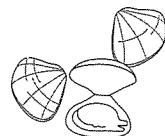
5. 魚

sakana / fish



6. 貝

kai / shellfish



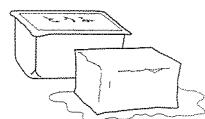
7. 野菜

yasai / vegetables



8. 豆腐

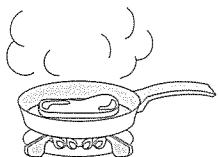
tōfu / tofu



#### Cooking Method

1. 焼く

ya-ku / grill



2. 炒める

ita-meru / stir-fry



3. 揚げる

a-geru / deep fry



4. 蒸す

mu-su / steam



5. 煮る

ni-ru / boil, simmer



6. 温かい

atata-kai  
/ warm



7. 冷たい

tsume-tai  
/ cold





# It's nice weather today, isn't it?

今日はいい天気ですね。

kyō wa ii tenki desu ne.



## Socializing I - Making Small Talk

世間話をする

### GOALS FOR UNIT 11

- Start a conversation after saying hello
- Make simple small talk by asking about a person's family and job
- Learn other ways to say goodbye than sayonara

## Phrase 1

Have a simple conversation about the weather.



今日はいい天気ですね。  
きょう てんき

Kyō wa ii tenki desu ne.

It's nice weather today, isn't it?

NOTE

"\_\_\_\_\_ desu ne." is frequently used when the speaker feels like the listener will agree with what he or she is saying.

### Ex.

ジョン : 今日はいい天気ですね。  
きょう てんき

田中 : そうですね。  
たなか

Jon : Kyō wa ii tenki desu ne.

Tanaka : Sō desu ne.

John : It's nice weather today, isn't it?

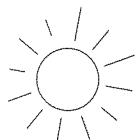
Tanaka : It sure is.

Practice  
A

今日は\_\_\_\_\_ですね。  
きょう \_\_\_\_\_

Use the following words with the phrase "Kyō wa \_\_\_\_\_ desu ne."

いい天気  
てんき



ii tenki

good weather

嫌な天気  
いや てんき

iyana tenki

bad weather

雨  
あめ

ame

rain

蒸し暑い  
む あつ

mushiatsui

humid

風が強い  
かぜ つよ

kaze ga tsuyoi

windy

暑い  
あつ

atsui

hot



寒い  
さむ

samui

cold



暖かい\*  
あたた

atatakai\*

warm

涼しい  
すず

suzushii

cool

\* "Atatakai" is frequently abbreviated to "attakai" in casual conversation.

Practice  
B

Put the words from Practice A in < > and practice having a conversation.

-John-san runs into the janitor of his apartment building on his way out-

ジョン : おはようございます。

管理人 : おはようございます。

かんりにん

ジョン : 今日は <いい天気> ですね。／今日も <いい天気> ですね。  
きょう てんき きょう てんき

管理人 : そうですね。最近／毎日、<暑い> ですね。  
かんりにん さいきん まいにち あつ

ジョン : 本当ですね。じゃ、いってきます。  
ほんとう

管理人 : いってらっしゃい。  
かんりにん

Jon : Ohayō gozaimasu.

Kanri-nin : Ohayō gozaimasu.

Jon : Kyō wa < ii tenki > desu ne.  
/ Kyō mo < ii tenki > desu ne.

Kanri-nin : Sō desu ne.  
Saikin / Mainichi < atsui > desu ne.

Jon : Hontō desu ne. Ja, ittekimasu.

Kanri-nin : Itterasshai.

John : Good morning.

Janitor : Good morning.

John : It's nice weather today, isn't it?  
/ The weather is nice again today, isn't it?

Janitor : It sure is.  
It's been hot lately/everyday.

John : It sure has. See you later.

Janitor : Have a nice day.

## MEMO

毎日 / mainichi / everyday  
まいにち

最近 / saikin / lately, most recent  
さいきん

本当ですね。/ Hontō desu ne. / It really is. / I'll say.  
ほんとう

いってらっしゃい。/ Itterasshai. / Have a nice day. [said to someone who is leaving]

いってきます。/ Ittekimasu. / See you later. [said by a person about to leave]

## Phrase 2

Talk about how you have been recently.

Track  
81

最近、仕事はどうですか。  
さいきん しごと

Saikin, shigoto wa dō desu ka.

How has your job been lately?

**NOTE** "Saikin \_\_\_\_\_ wa dō desu ka" means "How has [topic] been lately?" The phrase "Saikin dō desu ka." is also often used to ask a person how they have been.

Ex.

佐藤 さとう : 最近、仕事はどうですか。  
さいきん しごと

ジョン じゅんちよう : 順調です。

Satō : Saikin shigoto wa dō desu ka.  
Jon : Junchō desu.

Sato : How has your work been lately?  
John : It's been going well.

Practice A-1 最近\_\_\_\_\_はどうですか。

Use the following words with the phrase "Saikin \_\_\_\_\_ wa dō desu ka."

仕事  
shigoto  
job / work

調子  
chōshi  
condition

ご家族  
go-kazoku  
(your) family

学校／勉強  
gakkō / benkyō  
school / study

Practice  
A-2

\_\_\_\_\_です。  
Answer the questions above with the following words followed by "\_\_\_\_\_ desu."

順調  
jūnchō  
going well

元気  
genki  
fine

楽しい  
tanoshii  
fun / enjoyable

忙しい  
isogashii  
busy



まあまあ  
māmā  
so-so

大変  
taihen  
hard / tough

Practice  
B

Put the words from Practice A-1 and A-2 in < > and practice having a conversation.

-John-san runs into his former teacher-

ジョン : 先生、お久しぶりです。  
せんせい ひさ

前の先生 : あ、ジョンさん。お久しぶりです。お元気ですか。  
まえ せんせい ひさ げんき

ジョン : はい、おかげさまで。

前の先生 : 最近<sup>A-1</sup>〈仕事〉はどうですか。  
まえ せんせい さいきん しごと

ジョン : おかげさまで<sup>A-2</sup>〈順調〉です。  
じゅんちょう

先生はいかがですか。  
せんせい

前の先生 : 私も<sup>A-2</sup>〈順調〉ですよ。/ <sup>A-2</sup>〈忙しい〉ですよ。  
まえ せんせい わたし じゅんちょう いそが

Jon : Sensei, ohisashiburi desu.

Mae no sensei : A, Jon-san, ohisashiburi desu.  
O-genki desu ka.

Jon : Hai, okagesama de.

Mae no sensei : Saikin, <sup>A-1</sup>< shigoto > wa  
dō desuka.

Jon : Okagesama de <sup>A-2</sup>< junchō >  
desu.

Sensei wa ikaga desu ka.

Mae no sensei : Watashi mo <sup>A-2</sup>< junchō >  
desu yo.  
/ <sup>A-2</sup>< Isogashii > desu yo.

John : Sensei, I haven't seen you for quite  
a while.

Former teacher : Oh, John-san, it has been a long  
time.

How are you doing?

John : I'm doing well, knock on wood.

Former teacher : How has your work been?

John : It's been going well, fortunately.  
How about you?

Former teacher : I've been well. / I've been busy.

## MEMO

お久しぶりです。/ Ohisashiburi desu. / Long time no see. / It's been a while.

おかげさまで。/ Okagesama de. / Thanks to you. [an expression of gratitude indebteding a person for your success, health, and wellbeing; often used as a term of greeting to strengthen human relations even when no favors have been exchanged]

いかがですか。/ Ikaga desu ka. / How about you? [a polite way of saying "dō desu ka."]

## Phrase 3

Use natural-sounding Japanese when saying goodbye.

Track  
82

じゃ、また。

**Ja, mata.**

See you later.

**NOTE** "Ja", a contraction of "dewa", is used to mean "well" or "then" to end a topic of conversation. "Ja" is also used in modern Japanese as a way to say goodbye, akin to "see you" in English.

**Ex.**

ジョン : じゃ、また。

佐藤 さとう : じゃ、また来週。  
                                らいしゅう

Jon : **Ja, mata.**

Satō : Ja, mata raishū.

John : See you later.

Sato : See you next week.

Practice  
**A**

じゃ、\_\_\_\_\_。

Use the following words with the phrase "**Ja, \_\_\_\_\_.**"

また

mata

See you (later).

また来週

mata raishū

See you next week.

また今度

mata kondo

See you next time.

また後で\*<sup>1</sup>

mata atode\*<sup>1</sup>

See you later.

お大事に

o-daiji ni

Get well soon.

気をつけて

ki o tsukete

Take care.

(お先に\*<sup>2</sup>)失礼します  
(o-saki ni\*<sup>2</sup>) shitsurei shimasu

Goodbye.

また連絡します

mata renraku shimasu

I'll be in touch (soon).

お元氣で

o-genki de

Be well. / Take care of yourself.

- \* 1 The phrase "mata ato de" is used when you expect to see a person later that day or within a similar time interval.
- \* 2 The phrase "o-saki ni" means "before you." "Shitsurei shimasu" is often used as a way to say goodbye when leaving work before other people or when exiting a meeting, and is frequently shortened to "o-saki ni" in casual conversation.



Use words from practice A in <      > to practice having a conversation.

\* Choose words suitable for the situation.

### ① Leaving work before co-worker Tanaka-san

ジョン : じゃ、<                >。

田中 : おつかれさまでした。  
たなか

Jon : Ja, <                >.

Tanaka : Otsukaresama deshita.

John : See you <      >.

Tanaka : Goodbye.



### ② To a friend who is ill

ジョン : じゃ、<                >。

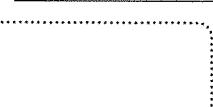
佐藤 : ありがとう。  
さとう

Jon : Ja, <                >.

Satō : Arigatō.

John : <      >.

Sato : Thank you.



### ③ To a friend you will not see for a long time

ジョン : じゃ、<                >。

友達 : <                >。

Jon : Ja, <                >.

Tomodachi : <                >.

John : <      >.

Friend : <      >.

#### MEMO

おつかれさまでした。/ Otsukaresama deshita. / Good work today. / Goodbye.

[“Otsukaresama deshita” is a greeting used in the workplace instead of “Goodbye.”]

**Dialogue**

Have a practice conversation replacing the words in (1) - (5).

- At a party -

**田中** : こんにちは。今日は(1)寒いですね。  
Tanaka : Konnichiwa. Kyō wa (1)samui desu ne.

**クマール** : 本当ですね。  
Kumāru : Hontō desu ne.

最近、(2)お仕事はどうですか。  
Saikin, (2)o-shigoto wa dō desu ka.

**田中** : (3)順調です。クマールさんは?  
Tanaka : (3)Junchō desu. Kumāru-san wa?

**クマール** : (4)忙しいです。  
Kumāru : (4)sogashii desu.

- Later -

**クマール** : すみません、

今日はそろそろ帰ります。  
kyō wa sorosoro kaerimasu.

**田中** : そうですか。じゃ、気をつけて。  
Tanaka : Sō desu ka. Ja, ki o tsukete.

**クマール** : じゃ、(5)また。

- At a party -

Kumāru : Hontō desu ne.

Saikin, (2)o-shigoto wa dō desu ka.

Tanaka : (3)Junchō desu. Kumāru-san wa?

Kumāru : (4)sogashii desu.

- Later -

Kumāru : Sumimasen,

kyō wa sorosoro kaerimasu.

Tanaka : Sō desu ka. Ja, ki o tsukete.

Kumāru : Ja, (5)mata.

- ① (1)暑い  
(2)調子  
(3)まあまあ  
(4)私もまあまあ  
(5)また来週

atsui  
chōshi  
māmā  
watashi mo māmā  
mata raishū

- ② (1)いやな天気  
(2)ご家族  
(3)元気  
(4)うちもみんな元気  
(5)お先に失礼します

iyana tenki  
go-kazoku  
genki  
uchi mo minna genki  
o-saki ni shitsurei shimasu

**MEMO**

そろそろ帰ります。/ Sorosoro kaerimasu. / I have to leave now.

うちもみんな元気です。/ Uchi mo minna genki desu. / Everyone at home is doing well.

## Listening

Listen to the conversation between the man and woman and choose the correct answer.

**Q1** Two neighbors are talking in the morning

Track  
84

1. It's hot everyday.
2. It's cool everyday.
3. It's warm everyday.

**Q2** Two colleagues from different departments are talking

Track  
85

1. The woman is busy.
2. The woman is not doing well.
3. The man is busy.

**Q3** At work

Track  
86

1. The woman is leaving now.
2. The man is leaving now.
3. The man and woman are meeting tomorrow.

**Q4** Two friends are talking after not seeing each other for a while

Track  
87

1. The man isn't doing too well.
2. The man is doing well.
3. The man is coming down with a cold.

## Role playing

Role play using the cards below.

1.

**A:** You run into B-san, your former co-worker, whom you haven't seen for a long time. Ask B-san how his/her job and family have been.

**B:** You run into A-san, former co-worker, whom you haven't seen for a long time. Ask how A-san is doing.

2.

**A:** You run into your neighbor B-san on the street. Talk about how the weather has been recently and say goodbye.

**B:** You run into your neighbor A-san on the street. Say hello.

## Do you remember?

Use the phrases you have studied in this unit in situations ①–③ below.

①



②



③



## Phrases for This Unit

### Unit Phrases

- 今日はいい天気ですね。  
kyō wa ii tenki desu ne. It's nice weather today, isn't it?
- 最近、仕事はどうですか。  
saikin shigoto wa dō desu ka. How has your job been lately?
- じゃ、また。  
Ja, mata. See you later.

### Useful expressions

- 本当ですね。  
hontō desu ne. It really is. / I'll say.
- おつかれさまでした。  
otsukaresama deshita. Good work today. / Goodbye.
- お久しぶりです。  
ohisashiburi desu. Long time no see. / It's been a while.
- そろそろ帰ります。  
sorosoro kaerimasu. I have to leave now.

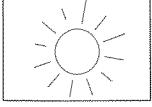
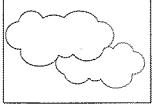
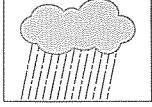
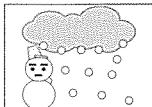
### Check!

#### ✓ Now I can...

- Start a conversation after saying hello
- Make simple small talk by asking about a person's family and job
- Learn other ways to say goodbye than sayonara

## One More Step

### ● Talking about the weather

3-gatsu Mar.		あたたかい atatakai warm	晴れ は hare sunny
4-gatsu Apr.	春 はる haru spring 	 さわやかですね。 Sawayaka desu ne. It's nice(balmy) outside today.	
5-gatsu May			くもり kumori cloudy 
6-gatsu Jun.	梅雨 つゆ tsuyu rainy season 	蒸し暑い も あつ mushiatsui humid	雨 あめ ame rain 
7-gatsu Jul.	夏 なつ natsu summer 	暑い あつ atsui hot 	雷 かみなり kaminari thunder 
8-gatsu Aug.		涼しい すず suzushii cool	台風 たいふう taifū typhoon 
9-gatsu Sep.		 気持ちいいですね。 Kimochi ii desu ne. It feels so nice.	
10-gatsu Oct.	秋 あき aki autumn 		
11-gatsu Nov.			
12-gatsu Dec.			
1-gatsu Jan.	冬 ふゆ fuyu winter 	寒い さむ samui cold 	風 かぜ kaze wind 
2-gatsu Feb.			雪 ゆき yuki snow 

→ See p.104, Calendar



Would you like to have a cup of tea?

お茶を飲みませんか。

ocha o nomimasen ka.

## Socializing II - Invitations -

誘う

### GOALS FOR UNIT 12

- Talk about your own experiences and ask about those of others
- Invite a person to do or have something
- Accept and refuse invitations

## Phrase 1

Invite a friend or co-worker to do something.

Track  
88

お茶を飲みませんか。  
ちゃ の

Ocha o nomimasen ka.

Would you like to have a cup of tea?

**NOTE** The negative question form of a masu verb, “[verb-stem]masen ka”, means “Would you like to [verb]?” or “Why don’t you [verb]?” and is used when inviting someone to do something with you.

Ex.

カレン：鈴木さん、これからお茶を飲みませんか。  
すずき

鈴木：いいですね。そうしましょう。

Karen : Suzuki-san, korekara ocha o nomimasen ka.

Suzuki : Ii desu ne. Sō shimashō.

Karen : Suzuki-san, would you like to have a cup of tea right now?

Suzuki : Sounds good. Let's do it.

Practice  
A-1

\_\_\_\_\_ませんか。

Change the “masu” portion of the following words to “\_\_\_\_\_ masen ka.”

お茶を飲み(ます)

ocha o nomi(masu)

have a cup of tea [lit. drink tea]

ボウリングをし(ます)

bōringu o shi(masu)

go bowling

映画を見(ます)

eiga o mi(masu)

see a movie

ごはんを食べに行き(ます)

gohan o tabe ni iki(masu)

go out to eat

飲みに行き(ます)

nomi ni iki(masu)

go out for a drink

遊びに行き(ます)

asobi ni iki(masu)

go out to have fun

Practice  
A-2

Add the following words to the phrases above to make invitations using “\_\_\_\_\_ masen ka.”

これから

korekara  
right now

今晚

konban  
tonight

週末

shūmatsu  
weekend

明日

ashita  
tomorrow  
→ See p.104, Calendar

Practice  
B

Put the words from Practice A-1 or A-2 in < > and practice having a conversation. Fill in [ ] with the name of a place.

## 1

鈴木 : ジョンさん、<sup>A-2</sup>〈これから〉一緒に<sup>A-1</sup>〈お茶を飲み〉ませんか。

ジョン : いいですね。どこに行きましょうか。

鈴木 : [ ]はどうですか。

ジョン : いいですね。そうしましょう。

Suzuki : Jon-san, <sup>A-2</sup>< korekara > issho ni  
<sup>A-1</sup>< ocha o nomi > masen ka.

Jon : Ii desu ne. Doko ni ikimashō ka.

Suzuki : [ ] wa dō desu ka.

Jon : Ii desu ne. Sō shimashō.

Suzuki : Jon-san, would you like to get tea with me  
right now?

John : That sounds nice. Where should we go?

Suzuki : How does [ ] sound?

John : That sounds great. Let's go there.

## 2

鈴木 : ジョンさん、<sup>A-2</sup>〈明日〉一緒に<sup>A-1</sup>〈映画を見〉ませんか。

ジョン : すみません、<sup>A-2</sup>〈明日〉はちょっと……。

鈴木 : そうですか。じゃ、また今度。

ジョン : すみません。また誘ってください。

Suzuki : Jon-san, <sup>A-2</sup>< ashita > issho ni  
<sup>A-1</sup>< eiga o mi > masen ka.

Jon : Sumimasen, <sup>A-2</sup>< ashita > wa chotto....

Suzuki : Sō desu ka. Ja, mata kondo.

Jon : Sumimasen. Mata sasotte kudasai.

Suzuki : Jon-san, would you like to go see a movie  
tomorrow?

John : I'm sorry, tomorrow's not good for me.

Suzuki : Okay. Well, next time, then.

John : Thanks. Please invite me again.

## MEMO

どこに行きましょうか。/ Doko ni ikimashō ka. / Where should we go?

～はどうですか。/ ... wa dō desu ka. / How about ...? / How does ... sound?

～はちょっと……。/ ... wa chotto.... / ... is no good for me.

じゃ、また今度。/ Ja, mata kondo. / Well, next time, then.

また誘ってください。/ Mata sasotte kudasai. / Please invite/ ask me again. [Often said after refusing an invitation]

## Phrase 2

Talk about things you have done.

Track  
89

温泉に行ったことがありますか。  
おんせん い

Onsen ni itta koto ga arimasu ka.

Have you ever been to an *onsen* (hot spring)?

**NOTE** “[Verb-ta] + koto ga arimasu” means “(I) have [done... ]” and is used to talk about one’s experience. → See p.173, Grammar: Ta-form

### Ex.

田中 : 温泉に行ったことがありますか。  
たなか おんせん い

ジョン : はい、あります。よかったです。

Tanaka : Onsen ni itta koto ga arimasu ka.

Jon : Hai, arimasu. Yokatta desu yo.

Tanaka : Have you ever been to an *onsen*?

John : Yes, I have. It was nice.

Practice  
A

[verb-ta] ことがあります。

Use the following words with the phrase “[verb-ta] koto ga arimasu ka.”

温泉に行った  
おんせん い

onsen ni itta

went to an *onsen* (hot spring)

カラオケに行った  
カラオケ い

karaoke ni itta

went to karaoke

スノーボードをした

sunō-bōdo o shita

went snowboarding

花見をした  
はなみ

hanami o shita

went flower-viewing

日本の花火を見た  
にほん はなび み

Nihon no hanabi o mita

saw Japanese fireworks

歌舞伎を見た  
かぶき み

kabuki o mita

saw kabuki  
→ See Appendix

お好み焼きを食べた  
この や た

okonomiyaki o tabeta

ate okonomiyaki

焼酎を飲んだ  
しょうちゅう の

shōchū o nondā

drank shochu

着物を着た  
きもの き

kimono o kita

wore a kimono

Practice  
B

Put the words from Practice A in <      > and practice having a conversation. Fill in [ ] with an adjective. → See Unit 9.

1

佐藤 さとう : ジョンさん、〈温泉に行った〉ことがありますか。

ジョン : はい、あります。

佐藤 さとう : そうですか。どうでしたか。

ジョン : とても [よかったです]。

→ See Appendix, Adjective Conjugation List



Satō : Jon-san, < onsen ni itta > koto ga  
arimasu ka.

Jon : Hai, arimasu.

Satō : Sō desuka. Dō deshita ka.

Jon : Totemo [ yokatta desu ].

Sato : John-san, have you ever been to an onsen  
hot spring?

John : Yes, I have.

Sato : I see. How did you like it?

John : It was really nice.

2

佐藤 さとう : ジョンさん、〈カラオケに行った〉ことがありますか。

ジョン : いいえ、ありません。

佐藤 さとう : じゃ、今度、一緒に行きませんか。

ジョン : いいですね。そうしましょう。

Satō : Jon-san, < karaoke ni itta > koto ga  
arimasu ka.

Jon : lie, arimasen.

Satō : Ja, kondo, issho ni ikimasen ka.

Jon : Ii desu ne. Sō shimashō.

Sato : John-san, have you ever been to karaoke?

John : No, I haven't.

Sato : Oh, then would you like to go with me  
sometime?

John : That sounds great. Let's do it.

## MEMO

そうしましょう。/ Sō shimashō. / Let's do that/it.

**Dialogue**

Replace the words (1) - (3) and put your own answers in < > to practice having a conversation. You can also use words and grammatical devices from Unit 8 to expand [ ] part of the conversation.

→ See p.104, Calendar

**Expand your conversation**

**田中** たなか : クマールさん、いつ日本に来ましたか。

クマール : <去年の9月>にきました。

**Expand your conversation**

Tanaka : Kumāru-san, itsu Nihon ni kimashita ka.

Kumāru : < Kyonen no 9-gatsu > ni kimashita.

**田中** たなか : (1)花見をしたことがありますか。

クマール : いいえ、ありません。

Tanaka : (1) Hanami o shita koto ga arimasu ka.

Kumāru : lie, arimasen.

**田中** たなか : よかったら、日曜日に(2)一緒に  
(3)行きませんか。

クマール : いいですね。(3)行きましょう。

Tanaka : Yokattara, Nichi-yōbi ni (2) issho ni  
(3) ikimasen ka.

**田中** たなか : じゃ、後で連絡しますね。

クマール : わかりました。楽しみにしてい

Kumāru : li desu ne. (3) ikimashō.

Tanaka : Ja, atode renraku shimasu ne.

ます。

Kumāru : Wakarimashita. Tanoshimi ni shite  
imasu.

- ① (1)スノーボードをした  
(2)みんなで  
(3)行き

sunō-bōdo o shita  
minna de  
iki

- ② (1)焼酎を飲んだ  
(2)一緒に  
(3)飲み

shōchū o nondā  
issho ni  
nomi

**MEMO**

よかつたら / yokattara / if you would like to, if it's alright with you

後で連絡します。/ atode renraku shimasu. / I will contact you/be in touch later.

楽しみにしています。/ Tanoshimi ni shite imasu. / I'm looking forward to it.

みんなで / minna de / with everyone

## Listening

Listen to the conversation between the man and woman and choose the correct answer.

**Q1** After work

- Track 91
1. They are going to have dinner.
  2. They are going out for a drink.
  3. They are going home.

**Q2** Two co-workers are talking at the office one morning

- Track 92
1. The man asked her out tonight.
  2. The man is eating with the woman tonight.
  3. The man is eating with the woman tomorrow.

**Q3** Two friends are talking

- Track 93
1. The man and woman and no one else are going to see fireworks.
  2. The man is going to the fireworks with her.
  3. The man is going to see Japanese fireworks by himself.

**Q4** Two friends are talking

- Track 94
1. The man is going to see kabuki tonight.
  2. The woman has seen kabuki before.
  3. They are going to see kabuki on the weekend.

## Role playing

Role play using the cards below

**A:** You want to go see a kabuki performance next month. Ask if B-san has ever seen kabuki, then invite him/her to join you when you go.

**B:** You have never seen a kabuki before. Accept A-san's invitation.

## Do you remember?

Use the phrases you have studied in this unit in situations ①–③ below.

①

Would you like to ...?



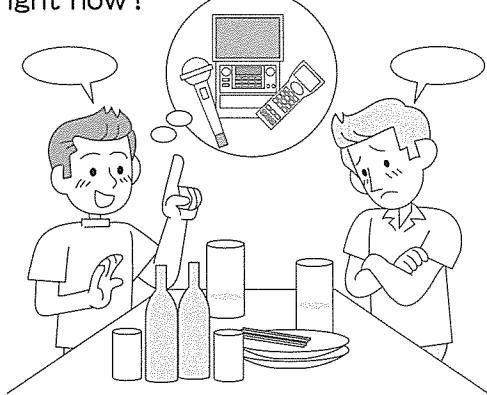
②

Have you ever ...?



③

Would you like to ...  
right now?



## Phrases for This Unit

### Unit Phrases

- お茶を飲みませんか。  
ちゃの  
Ocha o nomimasen ka. Would you like to have a cup of tea?
- 温泉に行ったことが  
ありますか。  
おんせんい  
Onsen ni itta koto ga arimasu ka. Have you ever been to an onsen (hot spring)?

### Useful expressions

- どこに行きましょうか。  
い  
Doko ni ikimashō ka. Where shall we go?
- そうしましょう。  
Sō shimashō. Let's do that/it.
- ~はどうですか。  
… wa dō desu ka. How about ...? / How does ... sound?
- ~はちょっと……。  
… wa chotto ..... . ... is no good for me.
- また誘ってください。  
させ  
Mata sasotte kudasai. Please invite/ ask me again.
- 楽しみにしています。  
たの  
Tanoshimi ni shite imasu. I'm looking forward to it.

Check!

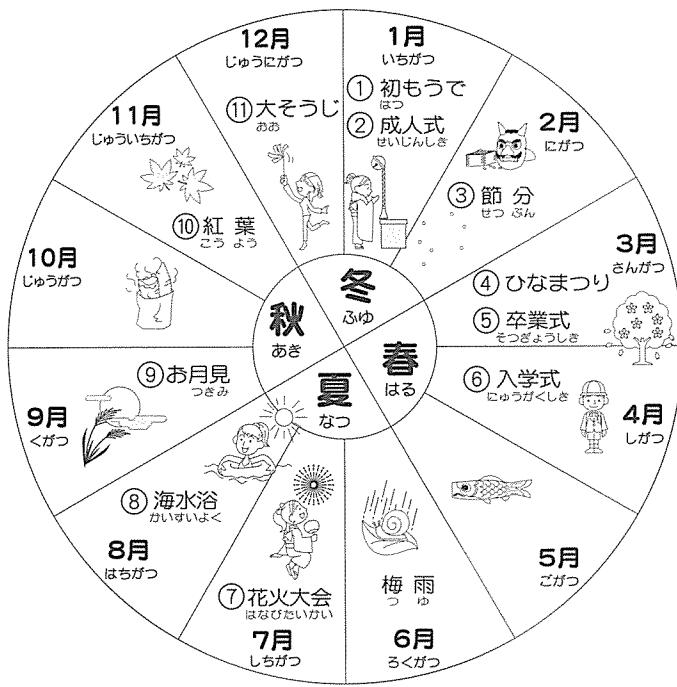
✓ Now I can...

- Talk about my own experiences and ask about those of others
- Invite a person to do or have something
- Accept and refuse invitations

## One More Step

Look at the pictures and talk about events throughout the year.

### ● Seasonal Event



- ① Hatsumōde / The first visit to a shrine of the new year
- ② Seijin-shiki / Coming-of-Age, Ceremony for people turning 20
- ③ Setsubun (Mame-maki) / Ceremony for the end of winter (bean throwing)
- ④ Hina-matsuri / Girls' Day, the Doll Festival
- ⑤ Sotsugyō-shiki / School graduations
- ⑥ Nyūgaku-shiki / Entrance ceremonies
- ⑦ Hanabi-taikai / Fireworks festivals
- ⑧ Kaisuiyoku / Sea-bathing
- ⑨ O-tsukimi / Moon-viewing
- ⑩ Kōyō / Changing of the leaves
- ⑪ Ōsōji / Year-end cleaning

do / have done	go / have been	see / have seen
(__を)します (_o) shimasu →(__を)した (_o) shita	(__に)行きます (_ni) ikimasu →(__に)行った (_ni) itta	(__を)見ます (_o) mimasu →(__を)見た (_o) mita

Talk about the seasonal event like the example below using the verbs above.

(1) 日本では、4月に入学式をします。  
Nihon de wa, 4-gatsu ni nyūgaku-shiki o shimasu.

We have entrance ceremonies in April.

→ Explain a tradition in your country\*.

\*my country = watashi no kuni

(2) 初もうでをしたことがありますか。

Hatsumōde o shita koto ga arimasu ka.

Have you ever done *hatsumode*? [the first visit to a shrine of the new year]

→ You can expand the scope of the conversation using the phrases below.

"Doko ni ikimashita ka."(Unit8), "Dō deshita ka."(Unit9), or "Kondo issho ni ikimasen ka."(Unit12)

# Grammar | 文 法

## I Sentence Structure

### 1. Basic Sentence Patterns

In broad terms, Japanese sentences can be divided into the following three patterns.

Watashi wa Nihon-jin desu.  
Meari-san wa isogashii desu.  
Tanaka-san wa rāmen o tabemasu.

I am a Japanese person.  
Mary-san is busy.  
Tanaka-san eats ramen.

[Noun Phrase]  
[Adjective Phrase]  
[Verb Phrase]

“Desu” has a similar function to “to be” in English, and comes at the end of Noun and Adjective Phrases. Verb Phrases end with [-masu].

“Wa” is a particle that denotes topics and subjects. (The particles “ga” and “mo” can also indicate a subject. → See p.166 for more information on particles)

### 2. Negative Sentences

Negative Sentences are made by modifying the end of a predicate, which is typically the last part of a sentence. This grammatical structure is the reason that one must listen to the very end of a Japanese sentence to know whether it is negative or affirmative.

Watashi wa Nihon-jin ja arimasen. I am not a Japanese person. [Negative Noun Phrase]  
Meari-san wa isogashiku nai desu. Mary-san is not busy. [Negative Adjective Phrase]  
Tanaka-san wa rāmen o tabemasen. Tanaka-san does not eat ramen. [Negative Verb Phrase]

Please refer to individual chapters for more detailed information on how to make negative sentences using all parts of speech.

### 3. Interrogative Sentences (Questions)

Attach “ka” to the end of a Declarative Sentence to create an Interrogative Sentence.

Meari-san wa isogashii desu ka. Is Mary-san busy?  
Tanaka-san wa rāmen o tabemasu ka. Does Tanaka-san eat ramen?

→ See p.179 for more information on interrogative words and sentences with wh-words (who, what, when, where, why, and how).

## II Particles

Creating longer sentences in Japanese typically involves inserting different kinds of information in between the subject and predicate. Grammatical units known as “**particles**” help simplify this process.

Japanese particles are similar to English prepositions, words like “**in**” and “**at**”. As shown below, while English uses prepositions, which precede the noun, clause, or phrase they modify, Japanese uses postpositions, which come after the clause or phrase.

Kare no heya de bangohan o tabemashita.

We had dinner in his room.

Maiasa roku-ji ni okimasu.

I wake up at six o'clock every morning.

Although particles themselves do not carry any meaning, they provide an important role in sentence formation.

For example, English does not use particles and thus relies on word order within a sentence. Changing the order of words in an English sentence can result in a completely different meaning.

I gave her my dog. ≠ \*I gave my dog her.

However, what is crucial in a Japanese sentence is not word order, but the units of information made up of a particle and the noun, clause, or phrase it modifies.

Watashi wa kanojo ni inu o ageta. = Watashi wa inu o kanojo ni ageta. (I gave her my dog.)

Even if the words of a sentence appear in a different order, as long as the particles remain the same, the meaning of the sentence does not change.

There are different types of particles. Take a look at the different particles and their functions below.

### 1. **wa**

#### [Subject]

Watashi **wa** Tai-jin desu.

I am a Thai person.

Kore **wa** gohyaku-en desu.

This costs 500 yen.

#### [Topic]

Kinō **wa** izakaya ni ikimashita.

Yesterday I went to an izakaya.

Natsu-yasumi **wa** nani o shimashita ka.

What did you do over the summer break?

#### [Comparisons]

Sushi **wa** suki desu ga, sashimi **wa** kirai desu. I like sushi, but I don't like sashimi.

## 2. o

### [Object]

Shimbun **o** yomimasu.

I read newspapers.

Kōhī **o** nomimasu.

I drink coffee.

## 3. ni

### [Object]

Tomodachi **ni** aimasu.

I'm going to see my friend.

Chichi **ni** nekutai o agemasu.

I'm going to give my dad a necktie.

Basu **ni** norimasu.

I'm going to get on the bus.

### [Destination]

Chūgoku **ni** ikimasu.

I'm going to China.

Nihon **ni** kimasu.

I'm coming to Japan.

Uchi **ni** kaerimasu.

I'm going back home.

\*The particle “e” is used to indicate a general direction as well as a destination, and is interchangeable with “ni”.

### [Time]

Shichi-ji **ni** okimasu.

I get up at seven o'clock.

Jūichi-ji **ni** nemasu.

I go to bed at eleven o'clock.

San-ji **ni** modorimasu.

I'll come back at three o'clock.

### [Location]

Otōto no heya **ni** terebi ga arimasu.

There's a TV in my little brother's room.

Uchi **ni** neko ga imasu.

There's a cat in the house.

## 4. de

### [Place of action]

Resutoran **de** bangohan o tabemasu.

I eat dinner at restaurants.

### [Means]

Basu **de** ikimasu.

I'll go by bus.

Hashi **de** tabemasu.

I eat with chopsticks.

### [Selection]

- Waiter: Would you like bread or rice? -

Pan **de** onegaishimasu.

Bread, please.

## 5. no

### [Possession]

watashi **no** kuruma

my car

tomodachi **no** hon

my friend's book

### [Affiliation]

A-sha **no** shain

A-daigaku **no** gakusei

### [Attribute (Type/Nature)]

Nihon-go **no** sensei

ichigo **no** shābetto

### [Apposition]

tomodachi **no** Yōko-san

otto **no** Tomu

### [Pronoun]

akai **no**

atsui **no**

an employee of Company A

a student at University A

a teacher of the Japanese language

strawberry sherbet

my friend, Yoko-san

my husband, Tom

the red one

the hot one

## 6. **to**

### [A partner in action]

Tomodachi **to** eiga o mimashita.

Eri-san **to** kekkon shimashita.

Shachō **to** hanashimasu.

I saw a movie with my friend.

I married Eri-san.

I'll talk with the CEO.

### [Parallel phrases]

pan **to** tamago

bread and eggs

## 7. **mo**

### [Sameness/Agreement]

Kore **mo** onegaishimasu.

Watashi **mo** eiga ga suki desu.

I'll have this, too, please.

I also like movies.

### [Emphasis]

Wain o go-hon **mo** nomimashita.

I drank five bottles of wine!

## 8. **kara**

### [Origin of duration or motion]

Uchi **kara** gakkō made samjuppun kakarimasu.

It takes thirty minutes from our house to the school.

## 9. **made**

### [End of duration or motion]

Ku-ji kara jūichi-ji **made** benkyō shimasu.

I study from nine until eleven o'clock.

## 10. **ga**

Although the particle “**ga**” essentially follows the subject of a sentence, it sometimes provides a function similar to other particles. Because this can make “**ga**” confusing to use, try to remember the five patterns below.

### [The subject of an interrogative sentence that uses an interrogative word]

Dare **ga** kimasu ka.

Who's coming?

Itsu **ga** ii desu ka.

When would be a good time?

### [The subject of a sentence denoting possession or location]

Uchi ni pasokon **ga** arimasu.

We have a computer at our house.

Toire ni neko **ga** imasu.

There's a cat in the restroom.

### [The subject of an embedded clause modifying a noun phrase]

Kore wa Bētōben **ga** tsukutta kyoku desu.

This is a piece of music that is composed by Beethoven.

### [Objects] → See p.18

(1) suki, kirai, jōzu, heta (like, dislike, be good at, be bad at)

Sakkā **ga** suki desu. I like soccer.

(2) wakaru, dekiru, mieru, kikoeru (understand, can do, can see, can hear)

Koko kara Fuji-san o miru koto **ga** dekimasu. It is possible to see Mount Fuji from here.

(3) hoshii, shitai (want, want to do)

Atarashii terebi **ga** hoshii desu. I want a new TV.

Nihon-go **ga** benkyō shitai desu. I want to study Japanese.

### [An aspect of part of the subject]

Imōto wa kami **ga** nagai.

My younger sister has long hair.

Nihon wa hanzai **ga** sukunai.

Japan has little crime.

### III Demonstratives

There are four types of Japanese demonstratives, which begin with “ko-”, “so-”, “a-”, and “do-” respectively. → See p.28, p.40

The table below shows how they are used.

[Table 1]

Demonstrative	“ko-” Close to the speaker	“so-” Farther than “ko-” or closer to the listener	“a-” Farther than “so-” or far from both the speaker and listener	“do-” Which, what, where
S=Speaker L=Listener				
Thing	kore	sore	are	dore
	kono [+noun]	sono [+noun]	ano [+noun]	dono [+noun]
Place	koko	soko	asoko	doko
Direction (Polite)	kocchi (kochira)	socchi (sochira)	acchi (achira)	docchi (dochira)
Area	kono hen	sono hen	ano hen	dono hen

### IV Existential and Possessive Sentences

An Existential Sentence is a sentence with a phrase describing a location or time in which a noun exists. When the subject of an Existential Sentence is animate (capable of moving), the verb “imasu/iru” is used, while “arimasu/arū” is used for inanimate objects. → See p.24, p.26, p.38

Kōen ni kodomo ga imasu.

A little kid is in the park.

Ekimae ni takushi ga imasu.

Taxis are in front of the station.

Uchi no mae ni kombini ga arimasu.

There's a convenience store in front of our house.

Niwa ni ki ga arimasu.

There's a tree in the garden.

Although a taxi is not alive, because the driver inside is capable of moving, it is considered animate. Likewise, although a tree is a living thing, because it cannot move on its own it is considered inanimate.

“**imasu**” and “**arimasu**” can also denote possession and scheduling, which are usages derived from their original meaning of existence.

-At a store- Kasa, **arimasu** ka.

Do you have umbrellas?

Ashita kaigi ga **arimasu**.

I have a meeting tomorrow.

Watashi wa imōto ga futari **imasu**.

I have two younger sisters.

Kodomo no koro, uchi ni inu ga **imashita**.

We had a dog at our house when I was a kid.

Although the subject of an Existential Sentence is primarily marked by “**ga**”, there are cases when it is denoted by the topic marker “**wa**”. → See p.166

## V Verbs

Verbs provide a great deal of information in Japanese, including affirmation/negation, tense, and politeness. In broad terms, Japanese verbs can be divided into **polite** and **plain forms**, while Japanese tense is either **past** or **non-past** (used for present and future actions). → See Unit 8

Although some verbs have irregular conjugations, for the most part they follow the same basic rules.

### 1. Basic Verb Conjugations and Functions

Polite verbs end in [-masu]. This conjugation is known as either the **masu-form** or the **polite form**.

[Table 2]

Masu-form		Affirmative	Negative
ikimasu Go	Non-past	ikimasu	ikimasen
	Past	ikimashita	ikimasendeshita

To find a verb in the dictionary, you need to search for the **dictionary form** or the **plain form**.

【Table 3】

Dictionary Form		Affirmative	Negative
taberu Eat	Non-past	taberu (dictionary form)	tabenai (nai-form)
	Past	tabela (ta-form)	tabenakatta

In certain contexts, the **masu-form** and **dictionary form** of a verb are used not to express tense or politeness, but to connect grammatical expressions.

Take a look at what sort of sentences can be made using the **masu-form** and **dictionary form** of the verb "nomu" (drink).

### 1. Masu-form

**nomimasu**

+ tai desu (**Desire**)

Nani ka **nomitai** desu.

I want something to drink.

+ ni ikimasu (**Destination of motion**)

**Nomi** ni ikimasu.

I'm going drinking.

### 2. Dictionary form

**nomu**

+ no ga suki desu (**Verb nominalization**)

Biru o **nomu** no ga suki desu.

I like drinking beer.

+ koto ga dekimasu (**Verb nominalization**)

Nihon-shu o **nomu** koto ga dekimasu.

I can drink Japanese sake.

Additional conjugations include the **nai-form**, **ta-form**, and **te-form**.

Let's take a look at what sort of sentences can be made using different forms of the verb "kaku" (write).

### 3. Nai-form

**kakanai**

+ nai de kudasai (**Negative request**)

Koko ni **kakanai** de kudasai.

Please don't write here/on this.

+ nai to ikemasen (**Obligation**)

Jūsho mo **kakanai** to ikemasen.

You must also write down your address.

#### 4. Ta-form → See Unit 12

##### **kaita**

+ koto ga arimasu (**Experience**)

Fan-retā o **kaita** koto ga arimasu.

I've written a fan letter before.

+ hō ga ii desu (**Advice**)

Nihon-go de **kaita** hō ga ii desu.

It'd be better to write it in Japanese.

The **te-form** is considered to be the most essential and crucial of all verb conjugations.

#### 5. Te-form → See Unit 5, Unit 6

##### **kaite**

Te-form (**A request to someone familiar**)

Koko ni nmaae o **kaite**.

Write your name here.

Te-form (**Verb connector**)

Tegami o **kaite**, neta.

I wrote a letter and went to bed.

+ kudasai (**Request**)

Koko ni nmaae o **kaite** kudasai.

Please write your name here.

+ imasu (**Progressive action**)

Ima tegami o kaite imasu.

I'm writing a letter right now.

+ mo ii desu ka (**Request for permission**)

Bōrupen de **kaite** mo ii desu ka.

May I write with a ballpoint pen?

## 2. How to Conjugate Verbs

We will now take a look at each verb conjugation. As mentioned before, although some exceptions do exist, most verbs apart from the two irregular verbs “**suru**” (do) and “**kuru**” (come) conjugate according to the same rules.

Verbs can be divided into three categories according to their conjugations. In order to memorize how verbs conjugate, it is important to first understand these three categories.

### 1. Ru-verbs

Verbs that end in [-ru] whose final vowel before [-ru] is [i] or [e].

Ex. taberu (eat), miru (look), miseru (show), akeru (open)

\*Exceptions: kaeru (go home / return), hairu (enter), hashiru (run), shiru (know) → **u-verb**

### 2. U-verbs

Verbs that end in sounds beside [ru], such as [u] or [tsu].

Verbs that end in [ru] whose final vowel before [ru] is [a], [u], or [o].

Ex. iku (go), motsu (hold), tobū (fly), sawaru (touch), uru (sell), noru (get on)

### 3. Irregular verbs

Two verbs, “**suru**” (do) and “**kuru**” (come).

Given the above rules, as long as you are aware of a few exceptions, you can categorize all verbs into one of three groups.

Although **ru-verbs** have the simplest rules for conjugations, the majority of verbs are **u-verbs**.

## How to make the dictionary form

### 1. Ru-verbs

Starting from the **masu-form**, replace [masu] with [ru].

-masu → -ru

tabemasu → taberu      mimasu → miru

### 2. U-verbs

Starting from the **masu-form**, remove [masu] and replace the final [i] with [u].

kakimasu → kaku      nomimasu → nomu

Note that sound changes occur when using *kana* from the **sa** and **ta rows**.

hanashimasu → hanasu      mochimasu → motsu

### 3. Irregular verbs

shimasu → suru      kimasu → kuru

## How to make the nai-form

### 1. Ru-verbs

Starting from the **masu-form**, replace [masu] with [nai]

-masu → -nai

tabemasu → tabenai      mimasu → minai

### 2. U-verbs

Starting from the **masu-form**, remove [masu] and replace the final [i] with [anai].

-imasu → -anai

kakimasu → kakanai      nomimasu → nomanai

However, if the final [u] of the **dictionary form** of a verb is preceded by another vowel, the [u] becomes [wa] in the **nai-form**.

kau → kawanai      iu → iwanai

### 3. Irregular verbs

shimasu → shinai      kimasu → konai

## How to make the te-form

### 1. Ru-verbs

Starting from the **masu-form**, replace [masu] with [te]

-masu → -te

tabemasu → tabete      mimasu → mite

### 2. U-verbs

Although creating the **te-forms** of **u-verbs** is slightly complicated, they all obey certain rules, which are determined based on the final speech sound that remains after removing [masu] from the **masu-form** of each verb.

#### (1) -i, -chi, -ri → -tte

kajimasu → katte      mochimasu → motte      kaerimasu → kaette

#### (2) -mi, -bi, -ni → -nde

nomimasu → nonde      asobimasu → asonde      shinimasu → shinde

#### (3) -ki, -gi → -ite, -ide

kakimasu → kaite      oyogimasu → oyoide

\*Exception: ikimasu → itte

#### (4) -shi → -shite

hanashimasu → hanashite

### 3. Irregular verbs

shimasu → shite      kimasu → kite

\*The **ta-form** is identical to the **te-form** conjugation.

## VI Adjectives

Like Japanese verbs, Japanese adjectives convey crucial information at the end, such as negation and tense. Two types of Japanese adjectives exist, **i-adjectives** and **na-adjectives**, and they each have their own conjugation pattern.

When attaching an adjective to the front of a noun to create a noun phrase, adjectives that end in [i] are known as **i-adjectives**, and adjectives that end in [na] are called **na-adjectives**.

→ See Unit 9, Unit 10, Unit 11

【Table 4】

I-adjectives	Na-adjectives
hiroi heyā (a spacious room)	shizuka na heyā (a quiet room)
furui heyā (an old room)	kirei na heyā (a clean room)

Adjectives function in two ways depending on if they are used in the predicate of a sentence or as part of a noun phrase.

Kono kaban wa **chiisai desu**.

This bag is **small**.

Kore wa **chiisai** kaban desu.

This is a **small** bag.

Kono mondai wa **kantan desu**.

This problem is **simple**.

Kore wa **kantan na** mondai desu.

This is a **simple** problem.

【Table 5】

	I-adjective* <sup>1</sup> hiroi (wide)		Na-adjective* <sup>2</sup> shizuka (quiet)	
	Affirmative	Negative	Affirmative	Negative
Non-past	hiroi desu	hirokunai desu	shizuka desu	shizuka dewa/ja arimasen
Past	hirokatta desu	hirokunakatta desu	shizuka deshita	shizuka dewa/ja arimasendeshita

\*1 I-adjective “ii (good)” conjugates irregularly.

	Affirmative	Negative
Non-past	ii desu	yokunai desu
Past	yokatta desu	yokunakatta desu

\*2 Na-adjectives also include the following conjugation.

	Affirmative	Negative
Non-past	shizuka desu	shizuka janai desu
Past	shizuka datta desu	shizuka janakatta desu

Note that the word [desu] is frequently omitted in casual conversation.

## VII Numbers

Japanese has different words for numbers depending on if numbers are said by themselves, or if they are used in conjunction with a counter word.

### 1. Stand-alone Numbers

Japanese numbers are based around 10, with numbers higher than 10 formed by stating the unit of 10 and then saying the words for 1 through 9.

0 (zero/rei), 1 (ichi), 2 (ni), 3 (san), 4 (yon/shi), 5 (go), 6 (roku), 7 (nana/shichi), 8 (hachi),  
9 (kyū/ku), 10 (jū), 11 (jūichi), 12 (jūni), ....., 20 (nijū), ....., 30 (sanjū)

Additionally, individual words exist for units of 10 with additional decimals, ranging from 10 (jū) and 100 (hyaku) to 1,000 (sen) and 10,000 (man). However, numbers higher than these units are composed by combining these four words.

100,000 jūman      1,000,000 hyakuman      10,000,000 (is)senman

100,000,000 (ichi)oku      1,000,000,000,000 (ic)chō      → See p.47

Stating a phone number: 03-5225-9733 would be [zero san (no) go ni ni go (no) kyū nana san san].

### 2. Counting time

\_\_\_ jikan \_\_\_hours

1 ichi-jikan	2 ni-jikan	3 san-jikan	4 yo-jikan	5 go-jikan
6 roku-jikan	7 shichi-jikan	8 hachi-jikan	9 ku-jikan	10 jū-jikan
11 jūichi-jikan	12 jūni-jikan	.....	20 nijū-jikan	30 sanjū-jikan

\_\_\_ ji \_\_\_o'clock

1 ichi-ji	2 ni-ji	3 san-ji	4 yo-ji	5 go-ji
6 roku-ji	7 shichi-ji	8 hachi-ji	9 ku-ji	10 jū-ji
11 jūichi-ji	12 jūni-ji			

\_\_\_ fun/pun \_\_\_minutes

1 ippun	2 ni-fun	3 sam-pun	4 yon-pun	5 go-fun
6 roppun	7 nana-fun	8 happun	9 kyū-fun	10 juppun
11 jūppun	12 jūni-fun	.....	20 nijuppun	30 sanjuppun

Ex. 3:50 = san-ji gojuppun      8:30 = hachi-ji sanjuppun / hachi-ji han (han = half) → See p.103

### 3. Counters

Japanese uses different counter words depending on what is being counted. → See p.29, p.43, p.53

- |                                  |                         |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Uchi ni CD ga hyaku-mai arimasu. | I have 100 CDs at home. |
| Kuruma ga mō ichi-dai hoshii.    | I want one more car.    |
| Hambāgā o futatsu kudasai.       | Two hamburgers, please. |

Counters are determined by the quality of the object(s) being counted. Numbers have different readings depending on the counter they are used with.

Note that the numbers 1 (ichi), 3 (san), 6 (roku), 8 (hachi), and 10 (jū) are especially prone to change.

【Table 6】

	<b>-mai</b>	<b>-dai</b>	<b>-ko / -tsu</b>	<b>-kai</b>	<b>-hon</b>	<b>-nin</b>
	Flat objects (paper, CDs, DVDs, shirts)	Large inanimate objects (TVs, PCs, cars, bicycles)	Small inanimate objects (eggs, hamburgers, tomatos)	Floors and number of times something is done	Long, tubular objects (pens, umbrellas, bottles)	People
1	ichi-mai	ichi-dai	<b>ikko/hitotsu</b>	<b>ikkai</b>	<b>ippon</b>	<b>hitori</b>
2	ni-mai	ni-dai	<b>ni-ko/futatsu</b>	<b>ni-kai</b>	<b>ni-hon</b>	<b>futari</b>
3	san-mai	san-dai	<b>san-ko/mittsu</b>	<b>san-kai*</b>	<b>sam-bon</b>	<b>san-nin</b>
4	yon-mai	yon-dai	<b>yon-ko/yottsu</b>	<b>yon-kai</b>	<b>yon-hon</b>	<b>yo-nin</b>
5	go-mai	go-dai	<b>go-ko/itsutsu</b>	<b>go-kai</b>	<b>go-hon</b>	<b>go-nin</b>
6	roku-mai	roku-dai	<b>rokko/ muttsu</b>	<b>rokkai</b>	<b>roppon</b>	<b>roku-nin</b>
7	nana-mai	nana-dai	<b>nana-ko/ nanatsu</b>	<b>nana-kai</b>	<b>nana-hon</b>	<b>shichi-nin</b>
8	hachi-mai	hachi-dai	<b>hachi-ko/ yattsu</b>	<b>hachi-kai/ hakkai</b>	<b>hachi-hon/ happon</b>	<b>hachi-nin</b>
9	kyū-mai	kyū-dai	<b>kyū-ko/ kokonotsu</b>	<b>kyū-kai</b>	<b>kyū-hon</b>	<b>kyū-nin</b>
10	jū-mai	jū-dai	<b>jukko/tō</b>	<b>jukkai</b>	<b>juppon</b>	<b>jū-nin</b>
?	nam-mai	nan-dai	<b>nan-ko/ikutsu</b>	<b>nan-kai*</b>	<b>nam-bon</b>	<b>nan-nin</b>

\*When talking about floors of a building, [san-gai] and [nan-gai] are also permissible.

## VIII Interrogatives

This section looks at interrogative sentences that use interrogative words like “what” and “who,” and provides a lineup of Japanese interrogatives.

Interrogative sentences are usually formed by using an interrogative word for the information you are asking for and adding “**ka**” to the end of the sentence.

### 1. what = nani / nan

Nani ga suki desu ka.

**What** do you like?

Kore wa **nan** desu ka.

**What** is this? → See Unit 4

### 2. what time = nan-ji

Nan-ji ni okimasu ka.

**What time** do you wake up?

Shigoto wa **nan-ji** made desu ka.

**What time** do you finish work?

### 3. where = doko → See Unit 2, Unit 8

Doko ni ikimasu ka.

**Where** will you go?

Doko de benkyō shimasu ka.

**Where** do you study?

### 4. who = dare

Dare to ikimasu ka.

**Who** are you going with?

Dare ga kimashita ka.

**Who** came?

When used as the subject of a sentence, interrogative words are always followed by “ga”.

### 5. what + [noun] = nan no + [noun]

Nan no hon o yomimashita ka. **What book** did you read?

### 6. what kind of = donna → See Unit 10

Donna hito desu ka.

**What kind of** person is he/she?

Donna tokoro desu ka.

**What kind of** place is it?

### 7. how many = nan + [counter] / ikutsu

Nan-jikan benkyō shimashita ka. **How many hours** did you study?

Nan-nin imasu ka.

**How many people** are there?

Ikutsu arimasu ka.

**How many** are there?

## 8. how = nan + [counter] / donogurai

Nan-sai desu ka.

**How old** are you?

Donogurai ikimasu ka.

**How often** do you go?

Donogurai tōi desuka.

**How far** is it?

Donogurai kakarimasu ka.

**How long** will it take? → See Unit 7

## 9. how much = ikura

Ikura desu ka.

**How much** is it? → See Unit 4

## 10. which = docchi / dochira / dore

with two options : **Docchi/dochira** ga suki desu ka. **Which** do you prefer?

with more than two options : **Dore** ga (ichiban) suki desu ka. **Which** do you like [the most]?

## IX Adverbs

In Japanese, adverbs come before verbs and adjectives and describe their state or degree.

### [State adverbs]

**Yukkuri** hanashite kudasai.

Please talk **slowly**.

Kono machi wa **sukkari** kawatta.

This town has **completely** changed.

**Kichinto** setsumei shite kudasai.

Please explain this **precisely**.

### [Degree adverbs]

**Totemo** oishii desu.

It's **very** delicious.

Nihon-go to Eigo wa **kanari** chigau.

Japanese and English are **pretty** different.

**Itsumo** wa biru desu ga, **tamani** shōchū o nomimasu.

I **always** drink beer, but **sometimes** I'll have shochu.

Eiga wa **amari** suki ja arimasen.

I **don't really** like movies.

Watashi wa kanojo o **zenzen** shiranai.

I **don't** know her **at all**.

Affirmative adverbs include "**totemo**" and "**kanari**" that describe degree and others like "**itsumo**" and "**tamani**" that describe frequency. Negative adverbs include "**amari**" and "**zenzen**".

Some adjectives like the ones listed below can be conjugated to function as adverbs.

hayai	→ hayaku	<b>Hayaku</b> tsukimashita.	I arrived <b>early</b> .
osoi	→ osoku	<b>Osoku</b> okimashita.	I woke up <b>late</b> .
sugoi	→ sugoku	Fuji-san wa <b>sugoku</b> kirei da.	Mt. Fuji is <b>amazingly</b> beautiful.
shizuka <b>na</b>	→ shizuka <b>ni</b>	<b>Shizuka ni</b> aruite kudasai.	Please walk <b>quietly</b> .
pojithibu <b>na</b>	→ pojithibu <b>ni</b>	Motto <b>pojithibu ni</b> kangaeyou.	Let's think more <b>positively</b> .

## X Omitting words

Particularly in spoken conversation, certain parts of a Japanese sentence can be omitted. Consider the examples below.

### 1. Subject omission

(Watashi wa) Jon desu.	(I am) John.
(Watashi wa) kaishain desu.	(I am) a company employee.
(Watashi wa) Amerika kara kimashita.	(I am) from the United States. → See Unit 1

Subjects that can be quickly understood from context in both interrogative and declarative sentences, particularly in ones in which the listener is the subject, are frequently omitted.

It is important to note that the word “**anata**”, which corresponds to the word “**you**” in English, is hardly ever used in Japanese conversation. Instead, a person’s name or job title is used when it is necessary to explicitly refer to them in conversation.

(Anata wa) kaishain desu ka.	(Are you) a company employee?
(Tanaka-san,) ima, isogashii desu ka.	(Tanaka-san, are you) busy right now?
(Sensei wa) rāmen o tabe masu ka.	(Sensei, do you) eat ramen?

### 2. Interrogative omission

When asking a question using an interrogative word in conversation, there are also times when the question word itself is omitted and only the subject is uttered.

O-shigoto wa (nan desu ka)?	What do you do?
O-namae wa (nan desu ka)?	What is your name? → See Unit 1

Like “**anata**”(you), the phrase “**anata no**”(your) is also not used when it can be easily inferred from context.

## XI Respectful Language

All languages have a method of conveying politeness depending on who someone is speaking to. Japanese is no exception to this, and Japanese keigo, or respectful language, is divided into two categories depending on who is speaking to whom. Sonkei-go, or honorific language, is used to promote the stature of a respectable person (listener or third party), while kenjō-go, or humble language, is used to lower the speaker's own status. The **desu/masu-form** is sometimes referred to as teinei-go, or polite language, which can be considered a form of keigo, but unlike sonkei-go and kenjō-go, both listener and speaker can use the **desu/masu-form** to show respect.

For example, the verb “**taberu**” (eat) has completely different forms depending on whether it is in teinei-go (polite), sonkei-go (honorific), or kenjō-go (humble).

### Ex.1 **Taberu** (eat)

Teinei-go	tabemasu
Sonkei-go	meshigarimasu
Kenjō-go	itadakimasu

While some verbs like “**taberu**” are replaced with completely different words when using polite language, most verbs follow a simple rule to promote the listener (**o+[masu-form stem]+ni narimasu**) or to demote the speaker (**o+[masu-form stem]+shimasu**). Additionally, attaching **[-rarenu]** or **[-areru]** to the stem of a **ru-verb** or **u-verb**, respectively, can also be used to promote the listener.

### Ex. 2 **Kariru** (borrow)

Teinei-go	karimasu
Sonkei-go	okari ni narimasu / kariraremasu
Kenjō-go	okarishimasu

### Ex. 3

- A-san is a librarian at a museum reference room. B-san is a student. -

A: Kono shiryō, okari ni narimasu ka / kariraremasu ka.

B: Ee, okari shitai desu.

A: Would you like to borrow these materials?

B: Yes, I would [like to borrow them].

Keigo is not only limited to verbs. Nouns can be modified with bika-go, or beautified language, to show respect.

In bika-go, the prefix “**o**” or “**go**” is attached to a noun.

Ex. o-mizu (water), o-sara (plate), o-hashi (chopsticks)  
go-shusshin (hometown), go-kazoku (family), go-shumi (hobby)

“**o**” is attached to wago, or native Japanese words, while “**go**” is attached to kango, or words that were borrowed from Chinese.

Keigo is often found in phrases frequently used at places that serve customers, such as shops, facilities, and areas of public transport. Sonkei-go phrases that elevate the status of the customer include “Omachi kudasai.” (Please wait.), “Yukkuri goran ni natte kudasai.” (Please take your time and have a look.), and “Irasshaimase.” (Welcome.)

Kenjō-go phrases that workers use to demote their own status include “Omatase shimashita.” (Thank you for waiting.), “Sugu omochi shimasu.” (I’ll bring that right out.), and “Densha ga mairimasu.” (A train is coming.), which can be heard all across Japan.

While the above was a brief introduction to Japanese polite language, keigo is not limited to verbs. Politeness in the Japanese language is an expansive system that extends all the way to nouns and adjectives, and reflects the dynamic between the people who use it and the people to whom it is used. Because of this complexity, keigo is not an aspect of the Japanese language that Japanese people naturally acquire and use without thinking, but a system that must be consciously studied.

Although it may take time for students of Japanese to comfortably use keigo, opportunities to listen to polite language abound at restaurants, buses, trains, and a variety of public places, so please begin your studies by listening to the keigo around you.

## Translation of Dialogue

### p.20 UNIT 1

John : How do you do. I'm John. It's nice to meet you.

Tanaka : How do you do. I'm Tanaka. The pleasure is all mine. John-san, what country are you from?

John : The United States.

Tanaka : I see. And where do you live?

John : In Chiba. How about you?

Tanaka : I live in Nakano. Do you like Japanese food?

John : Yes, I like tempura. / No, not really.

Tanaka : Oh, OK.

### p.32 UNIT 2

Kumar : Excuse me.

Woman : Yes?

Kumar : I'm trying to get to Sakura Park.

Woman : It's straight down this way.

Kumar : Okay. Oh, also, is there an ATM near here?

Woman : Let me think.... There's a convenience store.

Kumar : Where is the convenience store?

Woman : In front of Sakura Park.

Kumar : Thank you.

### p.46 UNIT 3

John : Excuse me, do you have T-shirts?

Clerk : Yes, we do. They're right here.

John : How much does that cost?

Clerk : It's 3900 yen.

John : Do you have anything a little cheaper?

Clerk : This one is 1980 yen.

John : OK, then I'll take three of those.

Clerk : Thank you.

### p.60 UNIT 4

Waitress : Are you ready to order?

John : What do you recommend?

Waitress : Today's lunch.

John : Then, I'll have one of those, please.

Waitress : What would you like to drink?

John : Cola, please.

Waitress : Would you like dessert with that?

John : No, thank you.

- During the meal -

John : Excuse me, could I have some water?

Waitress : Right away.

### p.72 UNIT 5

John : Excuse me, I'd like to become a member.

Clerk : Do you have any ID on you today?

John : Would you accept the alien registration card?

Clerk : Yes, that's alright. Also do you have a picture?

John : Um, can I bring one next time?

Clerk : No problem. Please fill this out, then.

John : Can I borrow this pen?

Clerk : Yes, please.

### p.86 UNIT 6

John : Oh, Tanaka-san. Please have a seat.

Tanaka : Thank you.

John : Have something to drink.

Tanaka : Ah, thanks.

John : Should I get you some chopsticks?

Tanaka : I have some so it's okay.

- Later -

John : Excuse me, Tanaka-san, could you pass me the salt?

Tanaka : Here you go.

### p.98 UNIT 7

John : How do I get from Tokyo to Kyoto?  
Suzuki : By bus or Shinkansen.  
John : How long does it take by bus?  
Suzuki : About six hours.  
John : How much does it cost?  
Suzuki : I think it's about 7,000 yen.  
John : I see. Thank you.

### p.112 UNIT 8

Tanaka : John-san, what did you do on the weekend?  
John : I went out to eat in Shinjuku. What about you, Tanaka-san?  
Tanaka : I had a relaxing time at home. What are you going to do on your next day off?  
John : I'm going to the park with my children.  
Tanaka : What will you do there?  
John : I want to take pictures.  
Tanaka : That sounds nice.

### p.124 UNIT 9

Sato : How was last weekend?  
Karen : It was very fun! It was my first visit to Kyoto. Kyoto is a very nice town.  
Sato : I see. How do you like Japanese temples?  
Karen : They're very beautiful.

### p.138 UNIT 10

John : What does nikujaga taste like?  
Suzuki : It's sweet. It's really good.  
John : Okay.  
This looks spicy, doesn't it?  
Suzuki : Yes, it does.  
John : I see. I'm not too good with spicy food. I can't eat it.  
Suzuki : Well, let's get something else. How about this?  
John : That looks good.  
Suzuki : Then let's have this.

### p.150 UNIT 11

Tanaka : Hello. It sure is cold today.  
Kumar : It really is. How has your job been lately?  
Tanaka : It's been well. How about your job, Kumar-san?  
Kumar : I've been busy.  
- Later -  
Kumar : If you'll excuse me, I need to be going home.  
Tanaka : Alright. Take care.  
Kumar : See you later.

### p.160 UNIT 12

Tanaka : Kumar-san, when did you come to Japan?  
Kumar : Last September.  
Tanaka : Have you ever gone flower-viewing?  
Kumar : No, I haven't.  
Tanaka : If you're interested, would you like to go flower-viewing together on Sunday?  
Kumar : That sounds great. I'd like to.  
Tanaka : Okay. I'll be in touch later.  
Kumar : Alright. I'm looking forward to it.

## Listening Answers and CD Script

p.21 [UNIT 1] Q1 1 Q2 3 Q3 1 Q4 3

### Q1

M: Hajimemashite. Watashi wa Tomu desu.  
Igirisu-jin desu. Dōzo yoroshiku.  
F: Emiri desu. Ōsutoraria kara kimashita.  
Kochira koso, dōzo yoroshiku.

M: How do you do. I'm Tom. I'm English.  
It's nice to meet you.  
F: I'm Emily. I'm from Australia.  
The pleasure is mine.

### Q2

F: Nīru-san, go-shusshin wa?  
M: Indo desu.  
F: O-shigoto wa nan desu ka.  
M: Kaishain desu.  
F: Neal-san, where are you from?  
M: India.  
F: What do you do?  
M: I work for a company.

### Q3

M: Ueda-san, karaoke wa suki desu ka.  
F: Ün, watashi wa amari....  
Demo, ongaku wa suki desu yo.  
M: Ueda-san, do you like karaoke?  
F: Well..., not so much. But I do like music.

### Q4

F: Tomu-san, o-sake wa suki desu ka.  
M: Hai, suki desu. Biru ga suki desu.  
Yamada-san mo o-sake, suki desu ka.  
F: Ee, watashi mo suki desu yo.  
F: Tom-san, do you like drinking?  
M: Yes, I do. I like beer. Do you drink, too?  
F: Yes, I sure do.

p.34 [UNIT 2] Q1 1 Q2 2 Q3 1 Q4 2

### Q1

M: Sumimasen. Kono hen ni intanetto-kafe,  
arimasu ka.  
F: Ee, asoko ni arimasu yo.  
M: Arigatō gozaimasu.  
F: Dō itashimashite.

M: Excuse me. Is there an internet café around here?

F: Yes, it's over there.  
M: Thank you.  
F: You're welcome.

### Q2

F: Sumimasen, reji, doko desu ka.  
M: Achira ni narimasu.  
F: A, arigatō gozaimasu.  
F: Excuse me, where is the cash register?  
M: It's over there.  
F: Ah, thank you.

### Q3

M: Ano..., hon-ya wa nan-kai desu ka.  
F: 3-kai ni narimasu.  
M: E, mō ichido ii desu ka.  
F: 3-kai desu.  
M: Arigatō gozaimasu.  
M: Um..., what floor is the bookstore on?  
F: The third floor.  
M: Pardon? Could you say that one more time?  
F: It's on the third floor.  
M: Thank you.

### Q4

M: Sumimasen, 100-en shoppu ni ikitai n desu ga  
....  
F: A, mukō. Ano kombini no ushiro ni arimasu yo.  
M: Arigatō gozaimasu.  
M: Excuse me, I'm trying to get to the 100-yen  
store, but....  
F: Ah, it's over there. It's behind that convenience  
store.  
M: Thank you.

p.48 [UNIT 3] Q1 3 Q2 2 Q3 2 Q4 1

### Q1

M: Sumimasen, tabako arimasu ka.  
F: Mōshiwake arimasen. Tabako wa nai n desu.  
M: A, sō desu ka. Wakarimashita.  
M: Excuse me, do you have cigarettes?  
F: I'm sorry, but we don't.  
M: Oh, I see.

## **Q2**

M: Sumimasen, kore, ikura desu ka.  
 F: Kasa wa..., 600-en desu.  
 M: Kono chizu wa ikura desu ka.  
 F: Sore wa 800-en desu.  
 M: A, wakarimashita.

M: Excuse me, how much is this?  
 F: Umbrellas are... 600 yen.  
 M: How much is this map?  
 F: That's 800 yen.  
 M: Oh, okay.

## **Q3**

M: Sumimasen, o-bentō arimasu ka.  
 F: Hai, kochira desu.  
 M: Jā, sore futatsu kudasai.  
 F: Kashikomarimashita.

M: Excuse me, do you have bento boxes?  
 F: Yes, they're right here.  
 M: Okay, then I'll have two, please.  
 F: Right away.

## **Q4**

M: Irasshaimase.  
 F: Sumimasen, kore, mōchotto ōkii no, arimasen ka.  
 M: Mōshiwake arimasen. Kore dake nandesu.  
 F: A, wakarimashita.

M: Welcome  
 F: Excuse me, do you have a bigger one of these?  
 M: I'm sorry, but that's all we have.  
 F: Oh, I see.

p.62 **[UNIT 4] Q1 3 Q2 1 Q3 1 Q4 2**

## **Q1**

M: Go-chūmon okimari desu ka.  
 F: Osusume wa nan desu ka.  
 M: Ikura desu.  
 F: Ikura tte nan desu ka.  
 M: Kochira desu. Sāmon-eggu desu yo.  
 F: Ā, jā, sore hitotsu kudasai.  
 M: Are you ready to order?  
 F: What do you recommend?  
 M: *Ikura*.  
 F: What is *ikura*?  
 M: This. It's salmon eggs.  
 F: Ooooh. OK, then I'll have one of those, please.

## **Q2**

F: Irasshaimase. Kochira de omeshiagari desu ka.  
 M: Hai, koko de.  
 F: Go-chūmon o dōzo.  
 M: Chīzu-bāgā to aisū-kōhī onegaishimasu.  
 F: Kashikomarimashita. Gamu-shiroppu to miruku wa go-riyō desu ka.  
 M: A, gamu-shiroppu wa, kekkō desu.  
 F: Welcome. Will you be eating here?  
 M: Yes.  
 F: Please order when you are ready.  
 M: I'll have a cheeseburger and an iced coffee, please.  
 F: Okay. Would you like cream and liquid sugar?  
 M: Ah, no liquid sugar, thank you.

## **Q3**

M: O-nomimono wa ikaga desu ka.  
 F: Jā, kore to onaji no o onegaishimasu.  
 M: Hai, nama-biru o o-hitotsu desu ne.  
 F: Hai.

M: Would you like something (else) to drink?  
 F: I'll have another one of this.  
 M: Okay, so one more draft beer, then.  
 F: Thank you.

## **Q4**

F: Arigatō gozaimashita. O-kaikei wa go-issho de yoroshii desu ka.  
 M: A, betsubetsu de.  
 F: Reshīto wa?  
 M: Kekkō desu.  
 F: Thank you. Will you be paying together?  
 M: Um, separate please.  
 F: Do you need a receipt?  
 M: No, thank you.

p.74 **[UNIT 5] Q1 1 Q2 3 Q3 2 Q4 2**

## **Q1**

M: Sumimasen, koko, tabako o sutte mo ii desu ka.  
 F: Mōshiwake gozaimasen. Kochira wa kin'en-seki nandesu.  
 M: Wakarimashita.  
 M: Excuse me, but can I smoke here?  
 F: I'm terribly sorry, but these are non-smoking seats.  
 M: I see.

## **Q2**

- M: Anō, kore, moratte mo ii desu ka.  
 F: Panfuretto desu ne. Ii desu yo. Sampuru mo dōzo.  
 M: A, dōmo.  
 M: Um, could I take one of these?  
 F: You must mean the pamphlets. That's fine.  
     Here's a free sample for you, too.  
 M: Ah, thanks.

## **Q3**

- F: Kochira ni go-kinyū kudasai.  
 M: Rōma-ji de ii desu ka.  
 F: Ee, kekkō desu.  
 F: Please fill this out.  
 M: Can I write in Roman letters?  
 F: Yes, that's fine.

## **Q4**

- M: 710-en ni narimasu.  
 F: Sumimasen, ichiman-en satsu de ii desu ka.  
 M: Ēto, a, daijōbu desu yo.  
 F: Jā, kore de.  
 M: Hai, arigatō gozaimashita.  
 M: That comes to 710 yen.  
 F: I'm sorry, but could I pay with a 10,000-yen note?  
 M: Hmm... ah, yes, that's fine.  
 F: Alright, then out of this, please.  
 M: Right away.

p.87 [UNIT 6] Q1 1 Q2 3 Q3 1 Q4 2

## **Q1**

- F: Sumimasen, kasa o kashite moraemasen ka.  
 M: Kochira de yoroshii desu ka.  
 F: Hai, arigatō gozaimasu.  
 F: Excuse me, but would you lend me an umbrella?  
 M: Is this one okay?  
 F: Yes, thank you.

## **Q2**

- F: Okimari desu ka.  
 M: Sumimasen, chotto matte kudasai.  
 F: Hai, kashikomarimashita.  
 F: Are you ready to order?  
 M: I'm sorry, could I have a minute?  
 F: Yes, sir.

## **Q3**

- M: Koko massugu desu ka.  
 F: A, iie. Shingō o hidari ni magatte kudasai.  
 M: Hai.  
 M: It's straight down here?  
 F: Ah, no. Please turn left at the traffic light.  
 M: Okay.

## **Q4**

- M: Anō, kono wain, nonde mo ii desu ka.  
 F: Dōzo, dōzo.  
 M: A, sumimasen. Sono gurasu, totte moraemasen ka.  
 M: Can I drink this wine?  
 F: Yes, yes, please.  
 M: Ah, thank you. Could you pass me that glass?

p.100 [UNIT 7] Q1 2 Q2 2 Q3 3 Q4 2

## **Q1**

- F: Sumimasen, kore, Hakone ni ikimasu ka.  
 M: Iie, Hakone wa tsugi no densha desu yo.  
 F: Arigatō gozaimasu.  
 F: Excuse me, does this (train) go to Hakone?  
 M: No, for Hakone you need the next train.  
 F: Thank you.

## **Q2**

- F: Sumimasen, Roppongi-hiruzu made dōyatte ikeba ii desu ka.  
 M: Chikatetsu de norikae ka..., asoko kara basu de ippon desu ne.  
 F: A, sō desu ka. Dōmo.  
 F: Excuse me, how do you get to Roppongi Hills?  
 M: You can transfer in the subway, or... you can go straight there with the bus over there.  
 F: Oh, I see. Thank you.

## **Q3**

- M: Sumimasen, koko kara Tōkyō-dōmu made doyatte ikeba ii desu ka.  
 F: Basu ka densha desu ne.  
 M: Densha de donogurai kakarimasu ka.  
 F: 10-pun gurai desu yo.  
 M: A, sō desu ka. Arigatō gozaimasu.  
 M: Excuse me, how do you get to Tokyo Dome from here?  
 F: You can take a bus or a train.  
 M: How long would a train take?

F: About 10 minutes.  
M: Oh, I see. Thank you.

#### Q4

M: Nakamura-san, Tōkyō kara Ōsaka made donogurai kakarimasu ka.  
F: Hikōki de 1-jikan gurai desu yo.  
M: Jā, shinkansen wa?  
F: Shinkansen de wa 3-jikan gurai desu yo.  
M: Nakamura-san, how far is it from Tokyo to Osaka?  
F: It's about an hour by plane.  
M: What about by Shinkansen?  
F: That's about three hours.

p.113 [UNIT 8] Q1 3 Q2 1 Q3 1 Q4 2

#### Q1

M: Otsukaresama desu  
F: Otsukaresama.  
M: Korekara doko ni ikimasu ka.  
F: Korekara hon-ya ni ikimasu. Ota-san wa?  
M: Boku wa korekara, tomodachi to gohan o tabe ni ikimasu.  
F: He, ii desu ne.  
M: Hey.  
F: Hello.  
M: Where are you going now?  
F: I'm going to the bookstore. How about you?  
M: I'm going to get something to eat with a friend.  
F: Oh, that sounds nice.

#### Q2

F: Ohayō gozaimasu.  
M: Ohayō gozaimasu.  
F: Shūmatsu, nani o shimashita ka.  
M: Shūmatsu wa shigoto deshita.  
F: Sō desu ka.  
M: Yamada-san wa?  
F: Watashi wa kōen ni ikimashita yo. Kazoku to.  
M: Hē, ii desu ne.  
F: Good morning.  
M: Good morning!  
F: What'd you do on the weekend?  
M: My weekend was work....  
F: Really....  
M: What about you, Yamada-san?  
F: I went to the park, with my family.  
M: Oh, that sounds nice.

#### Q3

M: Natsu-yasumi, nani o shimasu ka.  
F: Umi ni ikitai desu. Takahashi-san wa?  
M: Watashi wa uchi de yakkuri shitai desu.  
Demo, umi mo ii desu ne.  
F: Jā, issho ni ikimashō.  
M: Ii desu ne. Ikimashō.  
M: What are you doing for the summer break?  
F: I'm going to the beach. What about you, Takahashi-san?  
M: I just want to relax at home. But the beach sounds nice.  
F: We should go together!  
M: That sounds great. Let's do it!

#### Q4

F: Tomu-san, shūmatsu, nani o shimashita ka.  
M: Nihon-go o benkyō shimashita.  
F: Sō desu ka. Uchi de?  
M: Iie, gakkō de.  
F: Hē, kondo no yasumi mo gakkō desu ka.  
M: Iie, dokoka asobi ni ikitai desu.  
F: Sō desu ka.  
F: Tom-san, what did you do on the weekend?  
M: I studied Japanese.  
F: I see. At home?  
M: No, at school.  
F: Really! Are you going back to school on your next day off?  
M: No, I'm going to go have fun somewhere.  
F: I see.

p.126 [UNIT 9] Q1 1 Q2 2 Q3 3 Q4 1

#### Q1

M: An-san, Nihon no seikatsu wa dō desu ka.  
F: Sugoku omoshiroi desu.  
M: Sore wa yokatta. Ima sundeiru tokoro wa dō desu ka.  
F: Un, totemo kirei desu yo. Demo, chotto takai desu.  
M: Sō desu ne. Tōkyō wa takai desu yo ne.  
M: Ann-san, how do you like living in Japan?  
F: It's so much fun here.  
M: I'm happy to hear that. How is where you're living right now?  
F: Oh yes, it's very clean. Although a little expensive....  
M: I'll bet. Tokyo sure is expensive, isn't it?

## **Q2**

- M: Hayashi-san, kinō no nomikai wa dō deshita ka.  
 F: Māmā deshita. A, demo ryōri wa oishikatta desu yo.  
 M: A, sō desu ka.  
 M: Hayashi-san, how was yesterday's drinking party?  
 F: It was alright. Oh, but the food was delicious.  
 M: Oh really?

## **Q3**

- F: Ueda-san, ryokō wa dō deshita ka.  
 M: Taihen deshita. Totemo isogashikatta desu.  
 F: Sō desu ka. Hoteru wa dō deshita ka.  
 M: Ā, hoteru wa yokatta desu yo.  
 F: Sore wa yokatta desu ne.  
 F: Ueda-san, how was your trip?  
 M: It was terrible. I was so busy.  
 F: Really? How was the hotel?  
 M: Oh, the hotel was nice.  
 F: Well, I'm glad to hear that.

## **Q4**

- F: Maikeru-san, yasumi wa dō deshita ka.  
 M: Tanoshikatta desu. Tomodachi to Kyōto no o-tera ni ikimashita.  
 F: Sō desu ka. Ii desu ne. Nihon no o-tera wa dō desu ka.  
 M: Totemo kirei desu. Subarashii desu.  
 F: Michael-san, how was your vacation?  
 M: It was fun. I went with a friend to some temples in Kyoto.  
 F: Did you? That sounds nice. How do you like Japanese temples?  
 M: They're so beautiful. They're wonderful.

p.139 [UNIT 10] Q1 3 Q2 2 Q3 3 Q4 2

## **Q1**

- F: Kimu-san, kore, tabete mimasu ka.  
 M: Sore, donna aji desu ka.  
 F: Chotto suppai desu yo. Demo, oishii desu yo.  
 M: Jā, tabete mimasu.  
 F: Kim-san, why don't you try this?  
 M: What does it taste like?  
 F: It's a little sour. But it's good!  
 M: Okay, I'll give it a try.

## **Q2**

- M: Saitō-san, are, oishisō desu ne. Nan desu ka.  
 F: Ā, are wa, shabu-shabu desu yo. Gyūniku desu.  
 M: Ā, gyūniku desu ka.  
 F: Nigate desu ka.  
 M: Ee, chotto.... Nigate nandesu.  
 M: Saito-san, that sure looks good. What is it?  
 F: Oh, that's shabu-shabu. With beef.  
 M: Oh, beef?  
 F: Do you not like beef?  
 M: Yeah, I don't really eat it.

## **Q3**

- F: Nan ni shimasu ka. Kore wa dō desu ka.  
 M: Kore, nan desu ka.  
 F: Tōfu to shifūdo no sarada desu.  
 M: Hē, karada ni yosasō desu ne. Jā, kore ni shimashō.  
 F: What will you have? How about this?  
 M: What is it?  
 F: It's a tofu and seafood salad.  
 M: Wow, that sounds healthy. I'll have that, then.

## **Q4**

- M: Kimuchi wa dō desu ka.  
 F: Kimuchi? Kimuchi tte, donna aji desu ka.  
 M: Karai desu yo. Demo, oishii desu.  
 F: Ā, karai mono wa chotto....  
 M: Sō desu ka. Jā, hoka no ni shimashō.  
 M: How about kimchi?  
 F: Kimchi? What does kimchi taste like?  
 M: It's spicy, but it tastes really good.  
 F: Oh, I'm not so good with spicy foods.  
 M: Oh yeah? Then let's have something else.

p.151 [UNIT 11] Q1 3 Q2 1 Q3 1 Q4 2

## **Q1**

- F: A, dōmo. Kyō mo ii tenki desu ne.  
 M: Sō desu ne. Mainichi atatakai desu ne.  
 F: Hontō desu ne.  
 M: Jā, ittekimasu.  
 F: Itterasshai.  
 F: Hello. We have nice weather today, too, don't we?  
 M: Yes, it's been warm everyday, hasn't it?  
 F: It really has.  
 M: Well, I'm off.

F: Have a nice day.

## Q2

F: Konnichiwa. Saikin, chōshi wa dō desu ka.  
M: Okagesama de, genki desu. Yamada-san wa?  
F: Watashi mo genki desu. Demo, shigoto ga isogashikute....  
M: Taihen desu ne.  
F: Hello. How have you been lately?  
M: I've been OK, knock on wood. How about you?  
F: I've been good, too. But work sure is busy....  
M: It's rough, isn't it?

## Q3

F: Sumimasen, sorosoro kaerimasu. O-saki ni shitsurei shimasu.  
M: Otsukaresama deshita. Ki o tsukete.  
F: Jā, mata raishū.  
F: Excuse me, but I'm heading home. I'll see you later.  
M: Good work today. Take care.  
F: See you next week.

## Q4

F: Konnichiwa. O-hisashiburi desu ne.  
M: O-hisashiburi desu, Yamada-san.  
F: O-genki desu ka.  
M: Okagesama de. Kyō wa kaze ga tsuyoi desu ne,  
F: Hontō. Samui desu ne.  
F: Hello! It certainly has been a while.  
M: It really has, Yamada-san.  
F: How are you doing?  
M: I'm good, fortunately. The wind is really strong today, isn't it?  
F: I know! It's so cold.

p.161 [UNIT 12] Q1 2 Q2 1 Q3 2 Q4 3

## Q1

M: Otsukaresama. Emiri-san, korekara issho ni nomi ni ikimasen ka.  
F: Ii desu ne. Doko ni ikimashō ka.  
M: Shibuya wa dō desu ka.  
F: Un, sō shimashō.  
M: Hey there, Emily-san. Would you want to go get a drink together?  
F: That sounds great. Where should we go?

M: How does Shibuya sound?

F: Great, let's do it.

## Q2

F: Ohayō gozaimasu.  
M: Ohayō gozaimasu. A, Yamada-san, komban issho ni gohan o tabe ni ikimasen ka.  
F: Sumimasen. Komban wa chotto....  
M: Sō desu ka. Jā, mata kondo.  
F: Sumimasen, mata sasotte kudasai.  
F: Good morning.  
M: Good morning. Oh, Yamada-san, would you like to get something to eat tonight?  
F: I'm sorry, but tonight's not so good.  
M: It's not? Well, next time, then.  
F: Sorry about that. Do ask me again, though.

## Q3

F: Tomu-san, Nihon no hanabi o mita koto ga arimasu ka.  
M: Hanabi? Iie, mada desu.  
F: Yokattara, shūmatsu minna de hanabi o mimasen ka.  
M: Ii desu ne.  
F: Jā, atode renraku shimasu ne.  
F: Tom-san, have you ever seen fireworks in Japan?  
M: Fireworks? No, not yet.  
F: If you can, would you want to come see fireworks with everyone this weekend?  
M: I sure would!  
F: Okay, I'll get in touch with you later.

## Q4

M: Natari-san, kabuki o mita koto ga arimasu ka.  
F: Iie, arimasen.  
M: Shūmatsu, issho ni ikimasen ka.  
F: Ii desu ne. Ikimashō.  
M: Natalie-san, have you ever seen kabuki?  
F: No, I haven't.  
M: Would you want to go this weekend?  
F: That sounds great. Let's do it.

## ●著者紹介●

### 渡部由紀子 WATANABE Yukiko

Coto Language Academy(旧いいだばし日本語学院)代表。タイでの日本語教育、(株)クリートでの営業職を経て、ボランティア日本語グループWAIWAIで代表を務めるなど10年間活動。いいだばし日本語学院を設立し、会話中心の少人数レッスンで多様な学習ニーズに応えられるサービスを目指す。2児の母。

### 角谷佳奈 SUMITANI Kana

Coto Language Academyスタッフ兼講師。学習者ニーズ調査やカウンセリング担当。千葉県出身。大学で日本文学・日本語学専攻。通信会社勤務、速記者、ボランティア日本語教師経験後、現職に。海外一人旅にて様々なコミュニケーション術を学ぶ。

### 左弥寿子 HIDARI Yasuko

Coto Language Academyスタッフ兼講師。教材・カリキュラム開発担当。海産物卸売業を営む両親のもと、長崎に生まれる。スコットランドの大学院にて「産業としてのロック音楽」を研究。文化関連のシンクタンク勤務を経て、現職。

### 緒方由希子 OGATA Yukiko

Coto Language Academy(旧いいだばし日本語学院)講師。静岡県出身。美大卒業後、DTP、帽子デザインなどの仕事に携わる。日本語教師という職業を知り、異文化交流に興味があったことから日本語教師に転向。現在は駿台外語総合学院、ボランティア教室での講師も。

Coto Language Academyホームページ <http://cotoacademy.com>

著者連絡先 : info@cotoacademy.com

制作ご協力者 : Steve Kingさん、大場麻佐代さん、左江里子さん、左文江さん、駒場整骨院の先生、Matthew Harveyさん、渡部実亜さん・里沙さん、角谷収さん、白戸直人さん、Anahita Riaziさん、ラーメン専門三代目月見軒(写真提供)、桜井愛子さん他いいだばし日本語学院スタッフ

## NIHONGO FUN & EASY Survival Japanese Conversation for Beginners

2009年12月11日 初版第1刷発行

2016年11月15日 初版第9刷発行

著者 渡部由紀子、角谷佳奈、左弥寿子、緒方由希子

DTP 鮫島幹夫

翻訳 Ben Milam

イラスト 平塚徳明

装丁・本文デザイン 吉田清美

ナレーション Jason Hancock、廣瀬和也、深山信嗣、緒方由希子、角谷佳奈、左弥寿子

録音 株式会社巧芸創作

CDプレス 株式会社メディアリンクス

発行 株式会社アスク出版

〒162-8558 東京都新宿区下宮比町2-6 電話: 03-3267-6864 FAX: 03-3267-6867

発行人 天谷修平

印刷・製本 株式会社光邦

ISBN 978-4-87217-721-3

©OGATA Yukiko, SUMITANI Kana, HIDARI Yasuko, WATANABE Yukiko

乱丁・落丁の場合はお取り替えいたします。

Printed in Japan

# Handy Wordbook

## 別冊語彙集

### Contents | 目次

Verb Conjugation List   動詞活用表	2
Adjective Conjugation List   形容詞活用表	6
Countries and Regions   国・地域	10
List of Useful Words   お役立ち語彙集	11

Jobs   仕事	11	Food   料理	14
Hobbies / Sports   趣味 / スポーツ	11	Cooking Ingredient   食材	16
Shops / Facilities   店 / 施設	12	Drinks   飲み物	17
Clothing / Accessories   衣類 / アクセサリー	13	Tableware   食器類	18
Stationery   文房具	13	Daily Commodities   日用品	18
Furniture / Appliance   家具 / 電化製品	13	Vehicles / Train   乗り物 / 電車	18
Medicine   薬	14	Event   イベント	19
Colors   色	14	Traditional Arts   伝統芸能	19

# Verb Conjugation List | 動詞活用表

## • U-verb •

Meaning	Masu-form	Dictionary form	Te-form	Ta-form	Nai-form
meet	あいます	あう	あって	あった	あわない
keep (a luggage)	あずかります	あずかる	あずかって	あずかった	あずからない
rain	あめがふります	あめがふる	あめがふって	あめがふった	あめがふらない
walk	あるきます	あるく	あるいて	あるいた	あるかない
go	いきます	いく	いって	いった	いかない
hurry	いそぎます	いそぐ	いそいで	いそいだ	いそがない
think/guess/suppose	おもいます	おもう	おもって	おもった	おもわない
buy	かいります	かう	かって	かった	かわない
return (things)	かえします	かえす	かえして	かえした	かえさない
return/go home	かえります	かえる	かえって	かえった	かえらない
it takes (time)/cost	かかります	かかる	かかって	かかった	かからない
write/draw	かきます	かく	かいて	かいた	かかない
lend	かします	かす	かして	かした	かさない
do one's best	がんばります	がんばる	がんばって	がんばった	がんばらない
listen/hear	ききます	きく	きいて	きいた	きかない
sit	すわります	すわる	すわって	すわった	すわらない
smoke (cigarettes)	たばこをすいます	たばこをすう	たばこをすって	たばこをすった	たばこをすわない
use	つかいます	つかう	つかって	つかった	つかわない
make	つくります	つくる	つくって	つくった	つくらない
give one's help	てつだいます	てつだう	てつだって	てつだった	てつだわない
stop/stay(at a hotel)	とまります	とまる	とまって	とまつた	とまらない
take (a picture)	とります	とる	とって	とつた	とらない
drink	のみます	のむ	のんで	のんだ	のまない
enter	はいります	はいる	はいって	はいった	はいらない
put on (lower body)	はきます	はく	はいて	はいた	はかない
speak	はなします	はなす	はなして	はなした	はなさない
pay	はらいます	はらう	はらって	はらつた	はらわない
turn	まがります	まがる	まがって	まがつた	まがらない
wait	まちます	まつ	まつて	まつた	またない
receive/get	もらいます	もらう	もらって	もらつた	もらわない
be absent/get rest	やすみます	やすむ	やすんで	やすんだ	やすまない
read	よみます	よむ	よんで	よんだ	よまない
understand/know	わかります	わかる	わかって	わかつた	わかららない

• U-verb •

Meaning	Masu-form	Dictionary form	Te-form	Ta-form	Nai-form
meet	aimasu	au	atte	atta	awanai
keep (a luggage)	azukarimasu	azukaru	azukatte	azukatta	azukaranai
rain	ame ga furimasu	ame ga furu	ame ga futte	ame ga futta	ame ga furanai
walk	arukimasu	aruku	aruite	aruita	arukanai
go	ikimasu	iku	itte	itta	ikanai
hurry	isogimasu	isogu	isoide	isoida	isoganai
think/guess/suppose	omoimasu	omou	omotte	omotta	omowanai
buy	kaimasu	kau	katte	katta	kawanai
return (things)	kaeshimasu	kaesu	kaeshite	kaeshita	kaesanai
return/go home	kaerimasu	kaeru	kaette	kaetta	kaeranai
it takes (time)/cost	kakarimasu	kakaru	kakatte	kakatta	kakaranai
write/draw	kakimasu	kaku	kaite	kaita	kakanai
lend	kashimasu	kasu	kashite	kashita	kasenai
do one's best	gambarimasu	gambaru	gambatte	gambatta	gambaranai
listen/hear	kikimasu	kiku	kiite	kiita	kikanai
sit	suwarimasu	suwaru	suwatte	suwatta	suwaranai
smoke (cigarettes)	tabako o suimasu	tabako o suu	tabako o sutte	tabako o sutta	tabako o suwanai
use	tsukaimasu	tsukau	tsukatte	tsukatta	tsukawanai
make	tsukurimasu	tsukuru	tsukutte	tsukutta	tsukuranai
give one's help	tetsudaimasu	tetsudau	tetsudatte	tetsudatta	tetsudawanai
stop/stay(at a hotel)	tomarimasu	tomaru	tomatte	tomatta	tomaranai
take (a picture)	torimasu	toru	totte	totta	toranai
drink	nomimasu	nomu	nonde	nonda	nomanai
enter	hairimasu	hairu	haitte	haitta	hairanai
put on (lower body)	hakimasu	haku	haite	haita	hakanai
speak	hanashimasu	hanasu	hanashite	hanashita	hanasanai
pay	haraimasu	harau	haratte	haratta	harawanai
turn	magarimasu	magaru	magatte	magatta	magaranai
wait	machimasu	matsu	matte	matta	matanai
receive/get	moraimasu	morau	moratte	moratta	morawanai
be absent/get rest	yasumimasu	yasumu	yasunde	yasunda	yasumanai
read	yomimasu	yomu	yonde	yonda	yomanai
understand/know	wakarimasu	wakaru	wakatte	wakatta	wakaranai

● Ru-verb ●

Meaning	Masu-form	Dictionary form	Te-form	Ta-form	Nai-form
open	あけます	あける	あけて	あけた	あけない
be [animate]	います	いる	いて	いた	いない
wake up	おきます	起きる	おきて	おきた	起きない
be late	おくれます	おくれる	おくれて	おくれた	おくれない
teach	おしえます	おしえる	おしえて	おしえた	おしえない
change	かえます	かえる	かえて	かえた	かえない
borrow	かります	かりる	かりて	かりた	かりない
put on (upper body)	きます	きる	きて	きた	きない
eat	たべます	たべる	たべて	たべた	たべない
get tired	つかれます	つかれる	つかれて	つかれた	つかれない
go out	でかけます	でかける	でかけて	でかけた	でかけない
sleep	ねます	ねる	ねて	ねた	ねない
show	みせます	みせる	みせて	みせた	みせない
see/look/watch	みます	みる	みて	みた	みない
forget	わすれます	わすれる	わすれて	わすれた	わすれない

● Irregular verb ●

Meaning	Masu-form	Dictionary form	Te-form	Ta-form	Nai-form
be [inanimate]	あります	ある	あって	あった	ない
fill in	きにゅうします	きにゅうする	きにゅうして	きにゅうした	きにゅうしない
come	きます	くる	きて	きた	こない
cancel	キャンセルします	キャンセルする	キャンセルして	キャンセルした	キャンセルしない
take a walk	さんぽします	さんぽする	さんぽして	さんぽした	さんぽしない
work	しごとします	しごとする	しごとして	しごとした	しごとしない
try on	しちゃくします	しちゃくする	しちゃくして	しちゃくした	しちゃくしない
do/play	します	する	して	した	しない
jog	ジョギングします	ジョギングする	ジョギングして	ジョギングした	ジョギングしない
order	ちゅうもんします	ちゅうもんする	ちゅうもんして	ちゅうもんした	ちゅうもんしない
phone/call	でんわします	でんわする	でんわして	でんわした	でんわしない
study	べんきょうします	べんきょうする	べんきょうして	べんきょうした	べんきょうしない
bring (things)	もってきます	もってくる	もってきて	もってきた	もってこない
relax	ゆっくりします	ゆっくりする	ゆっくりして	ゆっくりした	ゆっくりしない
reserve	よやくします	よやくする	よやくして	よやくした	よやくしない
contact	れんらくします	れんらくする	れんらくして	れんらくした	れんらくしない

• Ru-verb •

Meaning	Masu-form	Dictionary form	Te-form	Ta-form	Nai-form
open	akemasu	akeru	akete	aketa	akenai
be [animate]	imasu	iru	ite	ita	inai
wake up	okimasu	okiru	okite	okita	okinai
be late	okuremasu	okureru	okurete	okureta	okurenai
teach	oshiemasu	oshieru	oshiete	oshieta	oshienai
change	kaemasu	kaeru	kaete	kaeta	kaenai
borrow	karimasu	kariyu	karite	karita	karinai
put on (upper body)	kimasu	kiru	kite	kita	kinai
eat	tabemasu	taberu	tabete	tabeta	tabenai
get tired	tsukaremasu	tsukareru	tsukarete	tsukareta	tsukarenai
go out	dekakemasu	dekakeru	dekakete	dekaketa	dekakenai
sleep	nemasu	neru	nete	neta	nenai
show	misemasu	miseru	misete	miseta	misenai
see/look/watch	mimasu	miru	mite	mita	minai
forget	wasuremasu	wasureru	wasurete	wasureta	wasurenai

• Irregular verb •

Meaning	Masu-form	Dictionary form	Te-form	Ta-form	Nai-form
be [inanimate]	arimasu	aru	atte	atta	nai
fill in	kinyū shimasu	kinyū suru	kinyū shite	kinyū shita	kinyū shinai
come	kimasu	kuru	kite	kita	konai
cancel	kyanseru shimasu	kyanseru suru	kyanseru shite	kyanseru shita	kyanseru shinai
take a walk	sampo shimasu	sampo suru	sampo shite	sampo shita	sampo shinai
work	shigoto shimasu	shigoto suru	shigoto shite	shigoto shita	shigoto shinai
try on	shichaku shimasu	shichaku suru	shichaku shite	shichaku shita	shichaku shinai
do/play	shimasu	suru	shite	shita	shinai
jog	jogingu shimasu	jogingu suru	jogingu shite	jogingu shita	jogingu shinai
order	chūmon shimasu	chūmon suru	chūmon shite	chūmon shita	chūmon shinai
phone/call	denwa shimasu	denwa suru	denwa shite	dennwa shita	denwa shinai
study	benkyō shimasu	benkyō suru	benkyō shite	benkyō shita	benkyō shinai
bring (things)	motte kimasu	motte kuru	motte kite	motte kita	motte konai
relax	yukkuri shimasu	yukkuri suru	yukkuri shite	yukkuri shita	yukkuri shinai
reserve	yoyaku shimasu	yoyaku suru	yoyaku shite	yoyaku shita	yoyaku shinai
contact	renraku shimasu	renraku suru	renraku shite	renraku shita	renraku shinai

# Adjective Conjugation List | 形容詞活用表

## • I-adjective •

Meaning	Non-Past		Past	
	Affir. (+です)	Neg. (+でない)	Affir. (+でした)	Neg. (+でなかった)
bright	あかるい	あかるくない	あかるかった	あかるくなかった
smart/wise	あたまがいい	あたまがよくない	あたまがよかったです	あたまがよくなかった
new	あたらしい	あたらしくない	あたらしかった	あたらしくなかった
hot	あつい	あつくない	あつかった	あつくなかった
dangerous	あぶない	あぶなくない	あぶなかったです	あぶなくなかった
good/fine	いい	よくない	よかったです	よくなかった
busy	いそがしい	いそがしくない	いそがしかった	いそがしくなかった
noisy	うるさい	うるさくない	うるさかったです	うるさくなかった
delicious/tasty	おいしい	おいしくない	おいしかった	おいしくなかった
big	おおきい	おおきくない	おおきかった	おおきくなかった
heavy	おもい	おもくない	おもかったです	おもくなかった
interesting/fun	おもしろい	おもしろくない	おもしろかったです	おもしろくなかった
good-looking/cool	かっこいい	かっこよくない	かっこよかったです	かっこよくなかった
light/lightweight	かるい	かるくない	かるかったです	かるくなかった
pretty/cute	かわいい	かわいくない	かわいかったです	かわいくなかった
dirty	きたない	きたなくない	きたなかった	きたなくなかった
feel good	きもちいい	きもちよくない	きもちよかったです	きもちよくなかった
dark	くらいい	くらくない	くらかったです	くらくなかった
scary/feel fear	こわい	こわくない	こわかったです	こわくなかった
cold [weather]	さむい	さむくない	さむかったです	さむくなかった
great	すごい	すごくない	すごかったです	すごくなかった
wonderful	すばらしい	すばらしくない	すばらしかった	すばらしくなかった
tall	せがたかい	せがたかくない	せがたかかったです	せがたかくなかった
short (in height)	せがひくい	せがひくくない	せがひくかったです	せがひくくなかった
narrow	せまい	せまくない	せまかったです	せまくなかった
expensive/high	たかい	たかくない	たかかったです	たかくなかった
enjoyable/fun	たのしい	たのしくない	たのしかった	たのしくなかった
small	ちいさい	ちいさくない	ちいさかったです	ちいさくなかった
close/near	ちかい	ちかくない	ちかかったです	ちかくなかった
boring	つまらない	つまらなくない	つまらなかった	つまらなくなかった
cold [thing]	つめたい	つめたたくない	つめたかったです	つめたくなかった
strong	つよい	つよくない	つよかったです	つよくなかった
far	とおい	とおくない	とおかかったです	とおくくなかった
long	ながい	ながくない	ながかったです	ながくなかった

• I-adjective •

Meaning	Non-Past		Past	
	Affir.(+desu)	Neg. (+desu)	Affir. (+desu)	Neg. (+desu)
bright	akarui	akarukunai	akarukatta	akarukunakatta
smart/wise	atama ga ii	atama ga yokunai	atama ga yokatta	atama ga yokunakatta
new	atarashii	atarashikunai	atarashikatta	atarashikunakatta
hot	atsui	atsukunai	atsukatta	atsukunakatta
dangerous	abunai	abunakunai	abunakatta	abunakunakatta
good/fine	ii	yokunai	yokatta	yokunakatta
busy	isogashii	isogashikunai	isogashikatta	isogashikunakatta
noisy	urusai	urusakunai	urusakatta	urusakunakatta
delicious/tasty	oishii	oishikunai	oishikatta	oishikunakatta
big	ōkii	ōkikunai	ōkikatta	ōkikunakatta
heavy	omoi	omokunai	omokatta	omokunakatta
interesting/fun	omoshiroi	omoshirokunai	omoshirokatta	omoshirokunakatta
good-looking/cool	kakko ii	kakko yokunai	kakko yokatta	kakko yokunakatta
light/lightweight	karui	karukunai	karukatta	karukunakatta
pretty/cute	kawaii	kawaikunai	kawaikatta	kawaikunakatta
dirty	kitanai	kitanakunai	kitanakatta	kitanakunakatta
feel good	kimochi ii	kimochi yokunai	kimochi yokatta	kimochi yokunakatta
dark	kurai	kurakunai	kurakatta	kurakunakatta
scary/feel fear	kowai	kowakunai	kowakatta	kowakunakatta
cold [weather]	samui	samukunai	samukatta	samukunakatta
great	sugoi	sugokunai	sugokatta	sugokunakatta
wonderful	subarashii	subarashikunai	subarashikatta	subarashikunakatta
tall	se ga takai	se ga takakunai	se ga takakatta	se ga takakunakatta
short (in height)	se ga hikui	se ga hikukunai	se ga hikukatta	se ga hikukunakatta
narrow	semai	semakunai	semakatta	semakunakatta
expensive/high	takai	takakunai	takakatta	takakunakatta
enjoyable/fun	tanoshii	tanoshikunai	tanoshikatta	tanashikunakatta
small	chiisai	chiisakunai	chiisakatta	chiisakunakatta
close/near	chikai	chikakunai	chikakatta	chikakunakatta
boring	tsumaranai	tsumaranakunai	tsumaranakatta	tsumaranakunakatta
cold [thing]	tsumetai	tsumetakunai	tsumetakatta	tsumetakunakatta
strong	tsuyoi	tsuyokunai	tsuyokatta	tsuyokunakatta
far	tōi	tōkunai	tōkatta	tōkunakatta
long	nagai	nagakunai	nagakatta	nagakunakatta

Meaning	Non-Past		Past	
	Affir. (+です)	Neg. (+です)	Affir. (+です)	Neg. (+です)
wide/large [space]	ひろい	ひろくない	ひろかった	ひろくなかった
old	ふるい	ふるくない	ふるかった	ふるくなかった
taste bad	まずい	まずくない	まずかった	まずくなかった
short	みじかい	みじかくない	みじかかった	みじかくなかった
difficult	むずかしい	むずかしくない	むずかしかった	むずかしくなかった
easy/kind	やさしい	やさしくない	やさしかった	やさしくなかった
cheap	やすい	やすくない	やすかった	やすくなかった
weak	よわい	よわくない	よわかった	よわくなかった
young	わかい	わかくない	わかかった	わかくなかった

● Na-adjective ●

Meaning	Non-Past		Past	
	Affirmative	Negative	Affirmative	Negative
safe	あんぜんです	あんぜんじゃありません	あんせんでした	あんぜんじゃありませんでした
easy	かんたんです	かんたんじゃありません	かんたんでした	かんたんじゃありませんでした
clean/beautiful	きれいです	きれいじゃありません	きれいでした	きれいじゃありませんでした
fine	げんきです	げんきじやありません	げんきでした	げんきじやありませんでした
quiet	しずかです	しずかじやありません	しずかでした	しずかじやありませんでした
skillful/good	じょうずです	じょうずじやありません	じょうずでした	じょうずじやありませんでした
simple	シンプルです	シンプルじやありません	シンプルでした	シンプルじやありませんでした
like/favorite	すきです	すきじやありません	すきでした	すきじやありませんでした
hard/tough/terrible	たいへんです	たいへんじやありません	たいへんでした	たいへんじやありませんでした
lively	にぎやかです	にぎやかじやありません	にぎやかでした	にぎやかじやありませんでした
free/not busy	ひまです	ひまじやありません	ひまでした	ひまじやありませんでした
complicated	ふくざつです	ふくざつじやありません	ふくざつでした	ふくざつじやありませんでした
friendly	フレンドリーです	フレンドリーじやありません	フレンドリーでした	フレンドリーじやありませんでした
unskillful/bad	へたです	へたじやありません	へたでした	へたじやませんでした
convenient	べんりです	べんりじやありません	べんりでした	べんりじやませんでした
serious	まじめです	まじめじやありません	まじめでした	まじめじやませんでした
famous	ゆうめいです	ゆうめいじやありません	ゆうめいでした	ゆうめいじやませんでした
selfish	わがままです	わがままじやありません	わがままでした	わがままじやませんでした

Meaning	Non-Past		Past	
	Affir.(+desu)	Neg. (+desu)	Affir. (+desu)	Neg. (+desu)
wide/large [space]	hiroi	hirokunai	hirokatta	hirokunakatta
old	furui	furukunai	furukatta	furukunakatta
taste bad	mazui	mazukunai	mazukatta	mazukunakatta
short	mijikai	mijikakunai	mijikakatta	mijikakunakatta
difficult	muzukashii	muzukashikunai	muzukashikatta	muzukashikunakatta
easy/kind	yasashii	yasashikunai	yasashikatta	yasashikunakatta
cheap	yasui	yasukunai	yasukatta	yasukunakatta
weak	yowai	yowakunai	yowakatta	yowakunakatta
young	wakai	wakakunai	wakakatta	wakakunakatta

### • Na-adjective •

Meaning	Non-Past		Past	
	Affirmative	Negative	Affirmative	Negative
safe	anzen desu	anzen ja arimasen	anzen deshita	anzen ja arimasen deshita
easy	kantan desu	kantan ja arimasen	kantan deshita	kantan ja arimasen deshita
clean/beautiful	kirei desu	kirei ja arimasen	kirei deshita	kirei ja arimasen deshita
fine	genki desu	genki ja arimasen	genki deshita	genki ja arimasen deshita
quiet	shizuka desu	shizuka ja arimasen	shizuka deshita	shizuka ja arimasen deshita
skillful/good	jōzu desu	jōzu ja arimasen	jōzu deshita	jōzu ja arimasen deshita
simple	shimpuru desu	shimpuru ja arimasen	shimpuru deshita	shimpuru ja arimasen deshita
like/favorite	suki desu	suki ja arimasen	suki deshita	suki ja arimasen deshita
hard/tough/terrible	taihen desu	taihen ja arimasen	taihen deshita	taihen ja arimasen deshita
lively	nigiyaka desu	nigiyaka ja arimasen	nigiyaka deshita	nigiyaka ja arimasen deshita
free/not busy	hima desu	hima ja arimasen	hima deshita	hima ja arimasen deshita
complicated	fukuzatsu desu	fukuzatsu ja arimasen	fukuzatsu deshita	fukuzatsu ja arimasen deshita
friendly	furendorī desu	furendorī ja arimasen	furendorī deshita	furendorī ja arimasen deshita
unskillful/bad	heta desu	heta ja arimasen	heta deshita	heta ja arimasen deshita
convenient	benri desu	benri ja arimasen	benri deshita	benri ja arimasen deshita
serious	majime desu	majime ja arimasen	majime deshita	majime ja arimasen deshita
famous	yūmei desu	yūmei ja arimasen	yūmei deshita	yūmei ja arimasen deshita
selfish	wagamama desu	wagamama ja arimasen	wagamama deshita	wagamama ja arimasen deshita

# Countries and Regions | 国・地域

Africa	Afurika	アフリカ	Europe	Yōroppa	ヨーロッパ
Benin	Benan	ベナン	Austria	Ōsutoria	オーストリア
Cameroon	Kamerūn	カメルーン	Belgium	Berugi	ベルギー
Côte d'Ivoire	Kōtojibōāru	コートジボアール	Bulgaria	Burugaria	ブルガリア
Egypt	Ejiputo	エジプト	Croatia	Kuroachia	クロアチア
Ethiopia	Echiopia	エチオピア	Czech	Cheko	チェコ
Ghana	Gāna	ガーナ	Denmark	Denmāku	デンマーク
Guinea	Ginia	ギニア	Estonia	Esutonia	エストニア
Kenya	Kenia	ケニア	Finland	Finrando	フィンランド
Madagascar	Madagasukaru	マダガスカル	France	Furansu	フランス
Morocco	Morokko	モロッコ	Germany	Doitsu	ドイツ
Nigeria	Naijeria	ナイジェリア	Greece	Girisha	ギリシャ
Senegal	Senegaru	セネガル	Hungary	Hangari	ハンガリー
South African Republic	Minami Afurika kyōwakoku	南アフリカ共和国	Iceland	Aisurando	アイスランド
Tanzania	Tanzania	タンザニア	Ireland	Airurando	アイルランド
Tunisia	Chunijia	チュニジア	Israel	Isuraeru	イスラエル
Asia/Oceania			Italy	Itaria	イタリア
Afghanistan	Afuganistan	アフガニスタン	Latvia	Ratobia	ラトビア
Australia	Ōsutoraria	オーストラリア	Lithuania	Ritoania	リトアニア
Bahrain	Bārēn	バーレーン	Luxembourg	Rukusenburuku	ルクセンブルク
Bangladesh	Banguradeshu	バングラデシュ	Moldova	Morudoba	モルドバ
China	Chūgoku	中国	Netherlands	Oranda	オランダ
India	Indo	インド	Norway	Noruwē	ノルウェー
Indonesia	Indonesia	インドネシア	Poland	Pōrando	ポーランド
Iran	Iran	イラン	Portugal	Porutogaru	ポルトガル
Iraq	Iraku	イラク	Romania	Rūmania	ルーマニア
Japan	Nihon	日本	Russian Federation	Roshia	ロシア
Korea	Kankoku	韓国	Spain	Supein	スペイン
Kuwait	Kuwēto	クウェート	Sweden	Suwēden	スウェーデン
Kyrgyzstan	Kirugisu	キルギス	Switzerland	Suisu	スイス
Lebanon	Rebanon	レバノン	Ukraine	Ukuraina	ウクライナ
Malaysia	Marēshia	マレーシア	United Kingdom	Igirisu	イギリス
Mongolia	Mongoru	モンゴル	North/Central/South America		
Myanmar	Myanmā	ミャンマー	Argentina	Aruzenchin	アルゼンチン
Nepal	Nepāru	ネパール	Brazil	Burajiru	ブラジル
New Zealand	Nyūjirando	ニュージーランド	Canada	Kanada	カナダ
Oman	Omān	オマーン	Chile	Chiri	チリ
Pakistan	Pakisutan	パキスタン	Colombia	Korombia	コロンビア
Philippines	Firipin	フィリピン	Costa Rica	Kosutarika	コスタリカ
Qatar	Katāru	カタール	Cuba	Kyūba	キューバ
Saudi Arabia	Sauji Arabia	サウジアラビア	Ecuador	Ekuadoru	エクアドル
Singapore	Shingapōru	シンガポール	Guatemala	Guatemara	グアテマラ
Sri Lanka	Suriranka	スリランカ	Jamaica	Jamaika	ジャマイカ
Taiwan	Taiwan	台湾	Mexico	Mekishiko	メキシコ
Thailand	Tai	タイ	Paraguay	Paraguai	パラグアイ
Turkey	Toruko	トルコ	Peru	Perū	ペルー
United Arab Emirates	Arabu shuchōkoku rempō	アラブ首長国連邦	United States of America	Amerika	アメリカ
Uzbekistan	Uzbekisutan	ウズベキスタン	Uruguay	Uruguai	ウルグアイ
Vietnam	Betonamu	ベトナム	Venezuela	Benezuera	ベネズエラ

## List of Useful Words

### お役立ち語彙集

The word list for Practice A, Practice B and Dialogue

\*ページ番号は、各ユニットでの初出ページです。

<b>Jobs</b> 仕事 しごと <b>Shigoto</b>	government worker 公務員 こうむいん kōmuin	company worker 会社員 かいしゃいん kaishain p.14	engineer エンジニア えんじにあ enjinia p.14	programmer プログラマー ぶろぐらまー puroguramā
lawyer 弁護士 べんごし <b>bengoshi</b>	accountant 会計士 かいけいし kaikeishi	tax accountant 税理士 ぜいりし zeirishi	banker 銀行員 ぎんこういん ginkōin	translater 翻訳家 ほんやくか hon'yakuka
interpreter 通訳(者) つうやく(しゃ) <b>tsūyaku(sha)</b>	doctor 医者 いしゃ isha	nurse 看護師 かんごし kangoshi	researcher 研究員 けんきゅういん kenkyūin	teacher 先生／教師 せんせい／きょうし sensei/kyōshi p.14
student 学生 がくせい <b>gakusei</b> p.14	artist アーティスト あーていすと āthisuto	architect 建築家 けんちくか kenchikuka	designer デザイナー でざいなー dezainā	musician ミュージシャン みゅーじしゃん myūjishan
cameraman カメラマン かめらまん <b>kameraman</b>	photographer 写真家 しゃしんか shashinka	writer 作家／ライター さっか／らいたー sakka/raitā	chef シェフ／コック しぇふ／こっく shefu/kokku	beautician 美容師 びようし biyōshi
self-employed 自営業 じえいぎょう <b>jieigyō</b>	housewife 主婦 しゅふ shufu p.14			

<b>Hobbies/Sports</b> 趣味／スポーツ しゅみ／すばーつ <b>Shumi/Supōtsu</b>	movie 映画 えいが eiga p.18, p.156	music 音楽 おんがく ongaku p.18	reading 読書 どくしょ dokusho	leisure walk 散歩 さんぽ sampo p.108
gardening ガーデニング がーでにんぐ <b>gādeningu</b>	paintings 絵 え e	travel/trip 旅行 りょこう ryokō p.18, p.110, p.122	leisure drive ドライブ どらいぶ doraibu	picture/photo 写真 しゃしん shashin p.70, p.84, p.112
shopping 買い物 かいもの <b>kaimono</b> p.106	cooking 料理 りょうり ryōri	bowling ボウリング ぼうりんぐ bōringu p.156	pool/billiard ビリヤード びりやーど biriyādo	karaoke カラオケ からおけ karaoke p.18, p.124, p.158
darts ダーツ だーつ <b>dātsu</b>	video games ゲーム げーむ gēmu	manga/comic まんが まんが manga	the outdoors アウトドア あうとどあ autodoa p.18	the internet インターネット いんたーねっと intānetto
eating tour 食べ歩き たべあるき <b>tabe-aruki</b>	cycling サイクリング さいくりんぐ saikuringu p.112	jogging ジョギング じょぎんぐ jogingu p.110	soccer/football サッカー さっかー sakkā p.18	baseball 野球 やきゅう yakyū

snowboarding スノーボード すのーぼーど sunōbōdo p.158	skiing スキー すきー suki	scuba diving スキューバダイビング すきゅーばだいびんぐ sukyūba-daibingu	surfing サーフィン さーふいん sāfin	yoga ヨガ よが yoga
dancing ダンス だんす dansu	golf ゴルフ ごるふ gorufu	tennis テニス てにす tenisu	ping pong 卓球 たっくじゅう takkyū	weight training ウエイトトレーニング うえいととれーにんぐ ueito-torēningu
martial arts 格闘技 かくとうぎ kakutōgi	judo 柔道 じゅうどう jūdō	aikido 合気道 あいきどう aikidō	karate 空手 からて karate	swimming 水泳 すいえい suiei
mountain climbing 山登り やまのぼり yama-nobori	hiking ハイキング はいきんぐ haikingu			

Shops/Facilities 店／施設 みせ／しせつ Mise/Shisetsu	bookstore 本屋 ほんや hon-ya p.28, p.106	flower shop 花屋 はなや hana-ya p.32	internet café インターネットカフェ いんたーねっとかふえ intānetto kafe p.26	restaurant レストラン れすとらん resutoran
café 喫茶店／カフェ きつさてん／かふえ kissaten/kafe	izakaya/Japanese pub 居酒屋 いざかや izakaya	bakery パン屋 ぱんや pan-ya	ramen house ラーメン屋 らーめんや rāmen-ya	sushi restaurant すし屋 すしや sushi-ya
electronics store 電気屋 でんきや denki-ya	beauty salon 美容院 びよういん biyō-in	barbershop 床屋 とこや tokoya	100-yen store 100円ショップ ひゃくえんしょっぷ hyaku-en shoppu p.26	discount store ディスカウントショップ でいすかうんしょっぷ disukaunto shoppu
drugstore 薬屋／ドラッグストア くすりや／どらぐすとあ kusuri-ya/doraggutsutoa p.26	pharmacy 薬局 やっきょく yakkyoku	super market スーパー sūpā p.26	convenience store コンビニ こんびに kombini p.26	bank 銀行 ぎんこう ginkō p.30
atm ATM ATM p.26	station 駅 えき eki p.26, p.107	bus stop バス停 ばすてい basu-tei p.26	movie theater 映画館 えいがかん eigakan p.30	museum 美術館 びじゅつかん bijutsukan p.30, 106
zoo 動物園 どうぶつえん dōbutsu-en p.30	police box 交番 こうばん kōban p.26	post office 郵便局 ゆうびんきょく yūbinkyoku p.30	amusement park 遊園地 ゆうえんち yūenchi	park 公園 こうえん kōen p.30, p.106
hotel ホテル ほてる hoteru p.82	guesthouse ゲストハウス げすとはうす gesuto-hausu p.82	gas station ガソリンスタンド がそりんすたんど gasorin sutando	parking lot 駐車場 ちゅうしゃじょう chūshajō p.26	city hall 区役所／市役所 くやくしょ／しやくしょ kuyakusho/shiyakusho
airport 空港 くうこう kūkō	university 大学 だいがく daigaku	school 学校 がっこう gakkō p.146	hospital 病院 びょういん byōin p.30	department store デパート でぱーと depāto

shopping mall ショッピングモール しょっぴんぐもーる shopingu mōru p.112	onsen (hot spring) 温泉 おんせん onsen p.158	temple お寺 おてら otera p.124	restroom トイレ といれ toire p.28	cash register レジ れじ reji p.28
elevator エレベーター えれべーたー erebētā	escalator エスカレーター えすかれーたー esukarētā	coin-operated locker コインロッカー こいんろっかー koin rokkā p.28	entrance 入り口 いりぐち iriguchi p.28	exit 出口 でぐち deguchi

Clothing/Accessories 衣類／アクセサリー いるい／あくせきりー Iruī/Akusesari	T-shirt Tシャツ ていーしゃつ T-shatsu p.42	dress shirt ワイシャツ わいしゃつ wai-shatsu	shoes 靴 くつ kutsu p.41, p.68	socks 靴下 くつした kutsushita
necktie ネクタイ ねくたい nekutai	shorts 半ズボン／ショートパンツ はんずぼん／しょーとばんつ han-zubon/shōto-pantsu	pants/trousers ズボン／パンツ ずぼん／ばんつ zubon/pantsu	jacket ジャケット じゃけっと jaketto	underwear 下着 したぎ shitagi
short/long sleeves 半／長そで はん／ながそで han-/naga-sode	skirt スカート すかーと sukāto	jeans ジーンズ じーんず jinzu	sweater セーター せーたー sētā	jumper ジャンパー じょんぱー jampā
kimono 着物 きもの kimono p.158	yukata/cotton kimono 浴衣 ゆかた yukata	watch/clock 時計 とき tokei p.41	scarf マフラー まふらー mafurā p.41	glasses めがね めがね megane
swimsuit 水着 みずぎ mizugi p.72	hat/cap 帽子 ぼうし bōshi p.72	pierced earring ピアス ぴあす piasu	earring イヤリング いやりんぐ iyaringu	necklace ネックレス ねっくれす nekkuresu
glove 手袋 てぶくろ tebukuro	belt ベルト べると beruto	ring ゆびわ ゆびわ yubiwa	handkerchief ハンカチ はんかち hankachi	bag バッグ／かばん ばっぐ／かばん baggu/kaban p.41

Stationery 文房具 ぶんぽうぐ Bumbōgu	notebook ノート のーと nōto p.41	pen ペン ぺん pen p.41, p.70	scissors ハサミ はさみ hasami	file ファイル ふあいる fairu
eraser 消しゴム けしこむ keshigomu	sticky note 付箋 ふせん fusen	scotch tape セロテープ せろてーぶ serotēpu	packaging tape ガムテープ がむてーぶ gamu-tēpu	staple ホッチキス ほっちきす hocchikisu

Furniture/Appliance 家具/電化製品 かぐ/でんかせいひん Kagu/Denka-seihin	desk 机 つくえ tsukue	chair いす いす isu	table テーブル てーぶる tēburu	bed ベッド べっど beddo
Japanese-style bedding 布団 ふとん futon	refrigerator 冷蔵庫 れいぞうこ reizōko	washing machine 洗濯機 せんたくき sentakuki	vacuum cleaner 掃除機 そうじき sōjiki	microwave 電子レンジ でんしれんじ denshi-renji

air conditioner エアコン えあこん eakon	printer プリンタ ぶりんた purinta	digital camera デジカメ/デジタルカメラ でじかめ/でじたるかめら dejikame/dejitaru-kamera p.46	personal computer パソコン ばそこん pasokon p.45, p.71	cellular phone 携帯(電話) けいたい(でんわ) keitai(denwa) p.45
electronic dictionary 電子辞書 でんしょじょ denshi-jisho p.45	TV テレビ てれび terebi p.108			

<b>Medicine</b>  <b>Kusuri</b>	headache medicine 頭痛薬 ずつうやく zutsū-yaku p.38	painkiller 痛み止め いたみどめ itami-dome	cold medicine かぜ薬 かぜぐすり kazegusuri	stomach medicine 胃薬 いぐすり igusuri
gargle うがい薬 うがいぐすり ugaigusuri	eye drops 目薬 めぐすり megusuri	nasal drops 点鼻薬 てんびやく tenbi-yaku	itch medicine かゆみ止め かゆみどめ kayumi-dome	disinfectant 消毒液 しょうどくえき shōdoku-eki
band-aid ばんそうこう ばんそうこう bandsōkō	diarrhea medicine 下痢止め げり止め geri-dome	wet cloth 湿布 しつぶ shippu	insecticide 殺虫剤 さつちゅうざい sacchū-zai	

<b>Colors</b>  <b>Iro</b>	red 赤(い) あかい aka(i) p. i , p.54	blue 青(い) あおい ao(i) p. i , p.46	yellow 黄色(い) きいろ(い) kiiro(i) p. i	black 黒(い) くろ(い) kuro(i) p. i , p.46, p.54
white 白(い) しろ(い) shiro(i) p. i , p.54	green 緑 みどり midori p. i	orange オレンジ おれんじ orenji p. i	pink ピンク ピンく pinku p. i	yellow-green 黄緑 きみどり kimidori p. i
dark blue 紺 こん kon p. i	light blue 水色 みずいろ mizuiro p. i	purple 紫 むらさき murasaki p. i	brown 茶色/ブラウン ちゃいろ/ぶらうん chairo/buraun p. i	gray 灰色／グレー はいいろ／ぐれー haiiro/gurē p. i

<b>Food</b>  <b>Ryōri</b>	Japanese food 日本料理 にほんりょうり Nihon ryōri p. i	sukiyaki すき焼き すきやき sukiyaki p. i	shabu-shabu しゃぶしゃぶ しゃぶしゃぶ shabu shabu p. i	grilled meat 焼肉 やきにく yakiniku p. i
grilled chicken skewers 焼き鳥 やきとり yakitori p. i	row fish 刺身 さしみ sashimi p. i	tempura 天ぷら てんぶら tempura p. i , p.20	fried chicken から揚げ からあげ karaage p. i	pork fried with ginger しょうが焼き しょうがやき shōgayaki p. i
chicken teriyaki 鶏の照り焼き とりのてりやき tori no teriyaki p. i	meat and potato stew 肉じゃが にくじゃが nikujaga p. i	tempura rice bowl 天丼 てんどん tendon p. ii	chicken and egg rice bowl 親子丼 おやこどん oyakodon p. ii	beef rice bowl 牛丼 ぎゅうどん gyūdon p. ii , p.55
pork cutlet rice bowl かつ丼 かつどん katsudon p. ii	broth with egg, steamed fish cake etc. おでん おでん oden p. i	sushi (お)すし／にぎりずし (お)すし／にぎりずし (お)sushi/nigiri zushi p. ii, p.18	sashimi or various toppings on sushi rice ちらしずし ちらしずし chirashi zushi p. ii	sushi rice-stuffed fried tofu いなりずし いなりずし inari zushi p. ii

sushi roll のり巻き のりまき norimaki p. ii	udon with deep-fried tofu きつねうどん きつねうどん kitsune udon p. ii	udon with tempura batter たぬきうどん たぬきうどん tanuki udon p. ii	buckwheat noodles with tempura 天ぷらそば てんぶらそば tempura soba p. ii	cold soba with dipping sauce ざるそば ざるそば zaru soba p. ii
soy sauce based ramen しょうゆラーメン しょうゆらーめん shōyu rāmen p. ii	salt based ramen 塩ラーメン しおらーめん shio rāmen p. ii	miso based ramen 味噌ラーメン みそらーめん miso rāmen p. ii	pork bone based ramen とんこつラーメン とんこつらーめん tonkotsu rāmen p. ii	fried noodles 焼きそば やきそば yakisoba p. ii
Japanese pan-fried pizza お好み焼き おこのみやき okonomiyaki p. ii, p.124, p.158	thin Japanese pan-fried pizza もんじゃ焼き もんじゃやき monjayaki p. ii	octopus dumpling たこ焼き たこやき takoyaki p. ii	cold tofu 冷奴 ひややっこ hiyayakko p. ii	deep-fried tofu with broth 揚げ出し豆腐 あげだしどふ agedashi dōfu p. ii
boiled soybeans 枝豆 えだまめ edamame p. ii	fried rolled egg 卵焼き たまごやき tamagoyaki p. ii	rice ball おにぎり おにぎり onigiri p. iii	rice bowl filled with green tea お茶漬け おちゃづけ ochazuke p. iii	miso soup 味噌汁 みぞしる misoshiru p. iii
pork miso soup with vegetables とん汁 とんじる tonjiru p. iii	bento box お弁当 おべんとう o-bentō p.41	Japanese Style Western Food 洋食 ようしょく Yōshoku p. iii	croquette コロッケ ころっけ korokke p. iii	fried shrimp えびフライ えびぶらい ebi furai p. iii
pork cutlet トンカツ とんかつ tonkatsu	hamburger meat ハンバーグ はんばーぐ hanbāgu	curry with rice カレー(ライス) かれー(らいす) karē (raisu) p. iii, p.52	pork cutlet curry カツカレー かつかれー katsu karē p. iii	omelette stuffed with rice オムライス おむらいす omuraisu p. iii
rice with hashed meat ハヤシライス はやしらいす hayashi raisu	pizza ピザ ぴざ piza	spaghetti meat sauce ミートソース みーとそーす mito sōsu p. iii	pasta with tomato ketchup ナポリタン なぽりたん naporitan	spaghetti with cod roe タラコスパゲッティ たらこすぱげってい tarako-supagethi
carbonara カルボナーラ かるばなーら karubonāra	gratin グラタン ぐらたん guratan	rice and cheese casserole ドリア どりあ doria	hamburger ハンバーガー <sup>一</sup> はんばーがー hambāgā p.57	cheeseburger チーズバーガー <sup>一</sup> ちーずばーがー chizu bāgā p.57
teriyakiburger テリヤキバーガー <sup>一</sup> てりやきばーがー teriyaki bāgā p.57	french fries (フライド)ポテト (ふらいど)ばとと (furaido)poteto p.57	salad サラダ さらだ sarada p.57	Chinese food 中華料理 ちゅうかりょうり Chūka ryōri p. iii	fried rice チャーハン ちゃーはん chāhan p. iii
pot stickers 餃子 ぎょうざ gyōza p. iii	spring roll 春巻き はるまき harumaki p. iii	steamed meat dumpling シュウマイ しゅうまい shūmai p. iii	shrimp with chili sauce エビチリ えびちり ebichiri	meat dumpling 肉まん にくまん nikuman
stir-fried vegetables 野菜炒め やさいいため yasai-itame	chop suey rice bowl 中華丂 ちゅうかどん chūkadon	cold Chinese noodles 冷やし中華 ひやしちゅうか hiyashi chūka	desserts デザート でざーと dezāto p. iii	strawberry shortcake ショートケーキ しょーとけーき shōto kēki p. iii
cream puff シュークリーム しゅーくりーむ shūkurīmu p. iii	pudding プリン プリン purin	chocolate parfait チョコレートパフェ ちょこれーとばふえ chokorēto pafe	sweet boiled beans みつまめ みつまめ mitsumame	dumpling だんご だんご dango
shaved ice かき氷 かきごおり kakigōri	pickled vegetables 漬物 つけもの tsukemono p. iii	pickled plum 梅干 うめぼし umeboshi p. iii, p.138	pickled daikon radish たくあん たくあん takuan p. iii	pickled vegetables in soy sauce ふくじんづけ ふくじんづけ fukujinzuke p. iv

Japanese leek pickles らっきょう らっきょう rakkyō p.iv	Korean style pickles キムチ きむち kimuchi p.iv			
<b>Cooking Ingredients</b> <b>食材</b> しょくざい <b>Shokuzai</b>	seasoning 調味料 ちょうみりょう chōmiryō	salt 塩 しお shio p.38, p.86	pepper こしょう こしょう koshō	sugar 砂糖 さとう satō p.58
soy sauce しょうゆ しょうゆ shōyu p.86	tabasco sauce タバスコ たばすこ tabasuko	mustard マスタード ますたーど masutādo	grated cheese 粉チーズ こなちーず kona-chīzu	sauce ソース そーす sōsu
a mixture of red pepper and other spices 七味(とうがらし) しちみ(とうがらし) shichimi (tōgarashi) p.iv	vinegar (お)酢 (お)す o-su	ponzu sauce (made from soy sauce and citrus juice) ポン酢 ほんず ponzu	mayonnaise マヨネーズ まよねーず mayonēzu	sweet sake (used as a condiment) みりん みりん mirin
ketchup ケチャップ けちゃっぷ kechappu	Chinese chili oil ラー油 らーゆ rā-yu	miso 味噌 みそ miso	condiments 薬味 やくみ yakumi p.iv	nori seaweed のり のり nori p.iv
green nori seaweed 青のり あおのり aonori p.iv	sliced dried bonito かつおぶし かつおぶし katsuobushi p.iv	pickled ginger 紅しょうが べにしょうが beni-shōga p.iv	sesame ごま ごま goma p.iv	green onion ねぎ ねぎ negi p.iv
grated daikon radish 大根おろし だいこんおろし daikon oroshi p.iv	wasabi わさび わさび wasabi p.iv, p.136	mustard からし からし karashi p.iv	fermented soybeans 納豆 なつとう nattō p.iv	tofu 豆腐 とうふ tōfu p.iv
deep-fried tofu 油揚げ あぶらあげ abura-age p.iv	fish paste かまぼこ かまぼこ kamaboko p.iv	konjac potato gel こんにゃく こんにゃく konnyaku p.iv, p.138	wakame seaweed わかめ わかめ wakame p.iv	kombu seaweed こんぶ こんぶ kombu p.iv
salted cod roe たらこ たらこ tarako p.iv	spiced cod roe 明太子 めんたいこ mentaiko p.iv	egg 卵 たまご tamago p.136	seafoods シーフード しーふーど shifūdo p.136	tuna まぐろ まぐろ maguro
shrimp えび えび ebi	squid いか いか ika	scallop ほたて ほたて hotate	octopus たこ たこ tako	abalone あわび あわび awabi
oyster かき かき kaki	sardine いわし いわし iwashi	salmon さけ さけ sake	mackerel さば さば saba	eel うなぎ うなぎ unagi
salmon roe いくら いくら ikura	urchin うに うに uni	crab かに かに kani	blowfish フグ ふぐ fugu	meat 肉 にく niku

pork 豚肉 ぶたにく butaniku p.136	beef 牛肉 ぎゅうにく gyūniku p.136	chicken 鶏肉 とりにく toriniku	minced meat ひき肉 ひきにく hikiniku	vegetables 野菜 やさい yasai
bean sprouts もやし もやし moyashi	lettuce レタス れたす retasu	cucumber きゅうり きゅうり kyūri	eggplant なす なす nasu	bitter melon ゴーヤ ごーや gōya
cabbage キャベツ きゃべつ kyabetsu	carrot にんじん にんじん ninjin	pepper ピーマン びーまん piman	onion たまねぎ たまねぎ tamanegi	bamboo shoot たけのこ たけのこ takenoko
spinach ほうれんそう ほうれんそう hōrensō	Japanese pumpkin かぼちゃ かぼちゃ kabocha	potato じゃがいも じゃがいも jagaimo	Japanese sweet potato さつまいも さつまいも satsumaimo	garlic ににく ににく ninniku
celery セロリ せろり serori	Chinese cabbage 白菜 はくさい hakusai	daikon radish 大根 だいこん daikon	lotus root レンコン れんこん renkon	burdock ごぼう ごぼう gobō
shiitake mushroom しいたけ いいたけ shiitake	champignon しめじ しめじ shimeji	hackberry えのき えのき enoki	fruits 果物 くだもの kudamono	grape ぶどう ぶどう budō
watermelon すいか すいか suika	apple りんご りんご ringo	tangerine みかん みかん mikan	loquat びわ びわ biwa	peach もも もも momo
strawberry いちご いちご ichigo	pear なし なし nashi	persimmon かき かき kaki	cherry さくらんぼ さくらんぼ sakurambo	

Drinks	water	tea	green tea	powdered green tea
飲み物 のみもの Nomimono	水 みず mizu p.38, p.46, p.60	お茶 おちゃ o-cha	緑茶 りょくちゃ ryoku-cha	抹茶 まっちゃ maccha
barley tea 麦茶 むぎぢゃ mugi-cha	oolong tea ウーロン茶 うーろんぢゃ Ūron-cha	black tea 紅茶 こうぢゃ kōcha	iced tea アイスティー あいすていー aisu-thi p.57	coffee コーヒー こーひー kōhi
iced coffee アイスコーヒー あいすこーひー aisu-kōhi p.57	cream (コーヒー)ミルク にーひーみるく (kōhi) miruku p.58	liquid sugar ガムシロップ がむしろっぷ gamu shiroppu p.58	café au lait カフェオレ かふえおれ afeore	cappuccino カプチーノ かぶちーの kapuchino
hot chocolate ココア ここあ kokoa	juice ジュース じゅーす jūsu	cola コーラ こーら kōra	ginger ale ジンジャエール じんじゃえーる jinjā ēru	milk 牛乳 ぎゅうにゅう gyūnyū p.38

soy milk 豆乳 とうにゅう tōnyū	alcoholic drink/Japanese sake (お)酒 (お)さけ (o)sake p.20,p.38	(canned/bottled) beer (缶／ビン)ビール (かん／びん)びーる (kan/bin) biru p.18	draft beer 生ビール なまびーる nama-biru p.52, p.60	Japanese sake 日本酒 にほんしゅ nihon-shu
hot sake 熱燗 あつかん atsukan	cold sake 冷酒 れいしゅ reishu	red/white wine (赤／白)ワイン (あか／しろ)わいん (aka/shiro) wain	champagne シャンパン しゃんぱん shampan	cocktail カクテル かくてる kakuteru
shochu (Japanese liquor similar to vodka) 焼酎 しょうちゅう shōchū p.158	with cold water 水割り みずわり mizu-wari	with hot water お湯割り おゆわり oyu-wari	with soda ソーダ割り そーだわり sōda-wari	shochu with lemon and soda レモンサワー れもんさー remon sawā
whiskey ウイスキー ういすきー uisuki	on the rocks ロック ろっく rokku	straight ストレート すとれーと sutorēto	shochu with tonic water チューハイ ちゅーはい chū-hai	plum wine 梅酒 うめしゅ umeshu

<b>Tableware</b> <b>食器類</b> じょっきるい <b>Shokki-rui</b>	plate/dish 皿 さら sara p.86	small plate 取り皿 とりざら torizara p.52	cup コップ こつぶ koppu	glass グラス ぐらす gurasu p.52
knife ナイフ ないふ naifu	fork フォーク ふおーく fōku p.52	Chinese soup spoon れんげ れんげ renge	spoon スプーン すぶーん supūn p.52	chopsticks (お)はし (お)はし (o)hashi p.58, p.86
disposable chopsticks 割りばし わりばし waribashi	straw ストロー すとろー sutorō p.58	rolled wet towel おしぶり おしぶり oshibori p.52	toothpick つまようじ つまようじ tsumayōji	napkin ナプキン なぶきん napukin

<b>Daily Commodities</b> <b>日用品</b> にちようひん <b>Nichiyō-hin</b>	umbrella かさ かさ kasa p.38	tissue ティッシュ ていしゅ thishu	toothbrush 歯ブラシ はぶらし haburashi	battery/dry cell 電池 でんち denchi p.38
light bulb 電球 でんきゅう denkyū	cigarette たばこ たばこ tabako p.38	ashtray 灰皿 はいざら haizara	towel タオル たおる taoru p.41	soap せっけん せっけん sekken
detergent 洗剤 せんざい senzai	paper bag 紙袋 かみぶくろ kami-bukuro p.58	plastic bag ビニール袋 びにーるぶくろ biniru-bukuro p.58	newspaper 新聞 しんぶん shimbun p.38	map 地図 ちず chizu p.38, p.84

<b>Vehicles/Train</b> <b>乗り物／電車</b> のりもの／でんしゃ <b>Norimono/Densha</b>	car/automobile 車／自動車 くるま／じどうしゃ kuruma/jidōsha p.97	motorcycle バイク ばいく baiku	bus バス ばす basu p.98	taxi タクシー たくしー takushi
airplane 飛行機 ひこうき hikōki p.98	bicycle 自転車 じてんしゃ jitensha p.45	boat/ship 船 ふね fune p.98	ferry フェリー ふえりー ferī	train 電車 でんしゃ densha p.93

subway	Shinkansen/bullet train	platform	platform no.-	ticket gate
地下鉄	新幹線	ホーム	~番線	改札
ちかてつ	しんかんせん	ほーむ	~ばんせん	かいさつ
chikatetsu p.26, p.97	shinkansen p.96	hōmu p.93	-ban sen p.93	kaisatsu
ticket	ticket salespoint	bound for -	local	rapid
切符	切符売り場	~行き	普通／各駅停車	快速
きっぷ	きっぷうりば	~いき	ふつう／かくえきていしゃ	かいそく
kippu	kippu-uriba	-iki	futsū/kakueki-teisha	kaisoku
express	special express	not in service	station employee	conductor
急行	特急	回送	駅員	車掌
きゅうこう	とっきゅう	かいそう	えきいん	しゃしょう
kyūkō	tokkyū	kaisō	eki-in	shashō
seat	designated seating	free seating	first-class car	last train
席	指定席	自由席	グリーン車	終電
せき	していせき	じゆうせき	ぐりーんしゃ	しゅうでん
seki	shitei-seki	jiyū-seki	gurin sha	shūden
first train	priority seating	women-only car	kiosk	station bento
始発(電車)	優先席	女性専用車	売店／キオスク	駅弁
はじはつ(でんしゃ)	ゆうせんせき	じょせいせんようしゃ	はいてん／きおすく	えきべん
shihatsu (densha)	yūsen-seki	josei-sen'yō sha	baiten/kiosku	eki-ben
<b>Event</b>	party	drinking party at izakaya	new year's party	year-end party
イベント	パーティー	飲み会	新年会	忘年会
いへんと	はーていー	のみかい	しんねんかい	ぼうねんかい
<b>Ibento</b>	pāthī p.122	nomikai p.122	shinnenkai	bōnenkai
spring break	summer break	winter break	rice-cake making	concert/gig
春休み	夏休み	冬休み	餅つき	コンサート／ライブ
はるやすみ	なつやすみ	ふゆやすみ	もちつき	こんさーと／らいぶ
haru-yasumi	natsu-yasumi	fuyu-yasumi	mochitsuki	konsāto/raibu
barbecue	fireworks display	flower(sakura) viewing	goodbye party	welcome party
バーベキュー	花火大会	花見	送別会	歓迎会
はーべきゅー	はなひたいかい	はなみ	そうべつかい	かんけいかい
bābekyū	hanabi-taikai p.158	hanami p.158	sōbetsukai	kangeikai
after-party	date	mixer	wedding	open-air festival
2次会	デート	合コン	結婚式	野外フェス
にじかい	でーと	こうこん	けっこんしき	やがいふえす
niji-kai	dēto	gō-kon	kekkonshiki	yagai-fesu
<b>Traditional Arts</b>	kabuki	sumo wrestling	noh theatre	tea ceremony
伝統芸能	歌舞伎	すもう	能	茶道
でんとうげいのう	かぶき	すもう	のう	さどう
<b>Dentō geinō</b>	kabuki p.158	sumō p.110	nō	sadō
flower arrangement	calligraphy	haiku poetry	Japanese comedic storytelling	
華道	書道	俳句	落語	
かどう	しょどう	はいく	らくご	
kadō	shodō	haiku	rakugo	



ISBN978-4-87217-721-3

C0081 ¥1900E



9784872177213



アスク出版

本体価格 1,900 円(税別)



1920081019007

